







*Harvey Bonnell*













NEW  
TRAVELS  
INTO THE  
INTERIOR PARTS  
OF  
AFRICA,

BY THE WAY OF

*THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE,*

IN THE YEARS 1783, 84 AND 85.

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH OF LE VAILLANT.

ILLUSTRATED WITH A MAP, DELINEATING THE ROUTE OF  
HIS PRESENT AND FORMER TRAVELS, AND WITH  
TWENTY-TWO OTHER COPPER-PLATES.

IN THREE VOLUMES.

---

VOL. II.

---

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR G. G. AND J. ROBINSON,  
PATERNOSTER-ROW.

1796.

NEW

TRAVELS

INTO THE

INTERIOR PARTS

OF

A F R I C A

BY THE WAY OF

THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE

IN THE YEARS 1782, 83, AND 84

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH OF LE VAILLANT

ILLUSTRATED WITH A MAP, DESCRIBING THE ROUTE OF  
HIS TRAVEL AND FORMER TRAVELS, AND WITH  
TWENTY-TWO OTHER COPPER-PLATES

IN THREE VOLUMES

VOL. II.

LONDON

PRINTED FOR G. ALLEN, R. ROBINSON,  
LONDON, AND T. BARNES, NEW-YORK



31  
43  
796  
12  
CNHRB

---

---

T R A V E L S

I N T O T H E

I N T E R I O R P A R T S

O F

A F R I C A .

---

C O U N T R Y O F T H E G R E A T E R A N D L E S S  
N I M I Q U A S .

**I**T had been my fate for some time to be incessantly fluctuating between hope and despair. We had not proceeded above four or five miles, when my eyes presented me with an object of hope and joy, in the footsteps of oxen. It is true these vestiges, as well as the dung they had left behind them, appeared by no means recent; but they proved, that a herd of cattle had at least passed that way;

VOL. II.

B

and

and whether it belonged to a horde of Hottentots, or was the property of Klaas Baster, the man of whom I was in search, I could promise myself, if I came up with it, to find both succour and friends.

While we were reasoning on these probabilities, and the most certain and speedy means of finding the herd, Kees, leaping out of my waggon with a cry of exultation, began to run on before, and was instantly followed by my dogs. Certainly it was not to attack any wild beast that my ape displayed such ardour; I knew him to be too great a coward. Till this moment I had never seen him thus adventurous but once, and that was on my first journey, when, in the country of the Caffres, he discovered the spring to which I gave his name.

A similar proceeding seemed to announce to me a similar discovery. I ran, therefore, to the place where he stopped, and at two hundred paces from the waggon, I perceived him surrounded by my pack, in a large wet hollow, which the dogs were digging with their paws in quest of water.

I called to my people, who advanced with spades and pick-axes, and began to dig. We  
soon

DSI



soon obtained two or three quarts of muddy and brackish water; and to render it drinkable, I threw into it a few ounces of ground coffee, as I had done into that of Krakkeel-klip. I had intended also to boil it as in that instance; but my people were so severely tortured with thirst, that none of them could consent to wait this process. Accordingly I was obliged to serve out this sort of liquid mud; and, like an impartial parent, I divided it, as was my custom, equally among all, so that a very small portion fell to the share of each.

We were at this time at the foot of a small chain of mountains, which ran from north to south, and, going off from the great chain which we had to the east of us, formed a defile, of which it was impossible for the eye to take in the whole extent.

Cattle had evidently remained here some time. The trodden earth every where exhibited the print of their feet. Not doubting, therefore, but I should soon find some Hottentot horde, that could inform me respecting the tribe of Baster, which Colonel Gordon had mentioned to me, I resolved to proceed along the defile, as the road to such discovery.

For this purpose it was requisite to leave my waggon, my equipage, and my cattle, at the entrance of the defie. This I did; appointing at the same time four persons as a guard, whom I directed to dig and enlarge the hole, that they might procure a sufficiency of water for themselves; and, if possible, for the few beasts I had left.

The number of these was considerably diminished. From the moment I entered the desert, and ceased to find game for the support of my people, I found myself obliged to kill all my sheep one after another. Since the death of England, I had also lost on the road two other oxen. All my cows had died. Of four horses two only remained, reduced to skin and bone, in the most deplorable state, and absolutely incapable of the least service. My goats only were exempt from sharing in our extreme distress. They had even constantly afforded us milk; and to this resource we were indebted for our preservation, as it had hitherto enabled me to furnish my people daily with a little, and even to bestow a portion on my dogs, who, for want of water, might otherwise soon have gone mad.

I took



I took with me eight men, among whom was Klaas. That our research might be conducted with more promptitude and certainty, I directed him, with three of his comrades, to proceed on the west of the small chain of mountains, and, marching northward, to follow its course; while I, in the mean time, with four hunters, penetrated the defile, which was completely covered with thickets.

After walking some time, I arrived at a path, which appeared much trodden. This discovery, at which we had every reason to rejoice, petrified my four men with terror. They fancied this path to lead to some retreat of the Boshmen, and begged me to advance no farther, lest we should be all killed by these robbers. In vain did I urge to them, that the greatest misfortune that could befall us in our present circumstances was the meeting with no one, and that it was impossible for us to extricate ourselves from our urgent distress without the aid of some human being; they beheld nothing at the end of the path but a horde of assassins; and, not daring to advance, they stopped, hesitating between shame at deserting me, and the fear of being murdered. “ If the devil

“himself be there, with all hell at his heels,” cried I, “I am determined to go and speak to him. However, my friends, if you have any dislike to follow me, you are at liberty to return: I can do without you.”

With these words I proceeded along the path, and I observed with pleasure that they all followed me. Their steps, however, were far from resolute. As they advanced, they debated on what they should do, if we fell in with a horde of Boshmen; how they should accost them, if they did not attack us, and how support each other and defend themselves, if they did. The plans of manœuvring formed by my savages, and the schemes they proposed for either case, whether of friends or enemies, did not fail to amuse me. I was particularly pleased to discover, that their fear, great as it was, had not deprived them of their mental faculties; and that, though they were much alarmed at the danger with which they believed themselves threatened, they took prudent precautions to defend themselves if we should be attacked.

But all their talents had been exerted in vain. Having pursued the path for an hour, we arrived

rived at the end of the defile, and found ourselves in the open country, where we saw Klaas and his comrades traversing a spot on which were some ruined huts. I made a sign to them to join me; and in the mean time I ascended a neighbouring height, from which I could discover whether there were any people to whom the huts belonged in the surrounding plain. All I could discover with my glass was an assemblage of cabins at a distance, which I conceived to be those of Hottentots; and among the rest there was one, which appeared to me larger than ordinary. Was this actually a Hottentot kraal? Or was it one of those temporary stations, which Baster, whom I sought, and who lived in the Hottentot manner, had chosen for himself and his people? But whether it were a kraal, or an abode of Baster, in order to obtain directions or assistance, it was necessary for me to repair to it without delay; which I accordingly did.

On my arrival, I perceived, to my sorrow, that they were all as empty as the former. They even appeared to have been deserted for several weeks. In the large one, however, I found one of those hand-mills which the



planters make use of for grinding their corn. The leaving this domestic implement indicated an intention of returning to this settlement; which was confirmed by two small fields near the cabin regularly sown with wheat and barley. But what signified to me, on the present occasion, the appearance of a speedy return? It was present assistance that I wanted, not the hope of what might occur. Yet in the midst of these disappointments I found one source of comfort: this was a spring, which, though brackish, as all we had met with for some time had been, was a very agreeable discovery, and assuaged for the moment our burning thirst.

From these indications I could not doubt, but the Hottentot horde, or the proprietor of these huts, had retired with their cattle into the passes and valleys of the neighbouring mountain; and I purposed to seek them there. But as it was too late to continue our search immediately, we deferred it to the next day, and made preparation for passing the night in the cabin in which was the mill. Our fires, for want of wood, were made with dry cow-dung, of which we found abundance; and I took  
care

care to keep several burning, in hopes that the master, if within sight of them, would have the curiosity to come the next day, to learn who were his new guests.

The next day, however, no one appeared, and we found ourselves obliged to continue our search. But towards what point we should direct our course was a question that puzzled me. Certain, at least, that it must still carry us farther and farther from my encampment, I resolved to send thither one of my people, with orders to bring my waggon and cattle to the place where I was. Besides that the ground here was less parched, the little spring would be sufficient for my cattle; for it undoubtedly promised to be more abundant than the hole which my dogs had begun, and which was probably already dried up. At the same time I issued an express injunction, to prevent my cattle from feeding on the fields that had been sown.

While my orders were carrying to the encampment, I proceeded with my company towards the great chain of mountains, hoping that there, being considerably elevated above the adjacent country, we should easily discern  
the

the abode of the proprietors of the deserted kraal. The road was disencumbered of obstructions. It was beaten by the footsteps of the herdsmen and their cattle, from the cabins to the loftiest summit. My eye could trace it winding along the sides of the mountains, losing itself occasionally in their hollows, and again re-ascending the more prominent parts, to terminate in the plain at the top.

At any other time I should by no means have thought of attempting so long and laborious a march, and even now I was sensible of all its difficulties. Leaving out of the account, that it would cost us a whole day's toil, and that perhaps to no purpose, I had reason to apprehend, that the fatigue of it, in our present exhausted state, would be more than we could support. Besides, if there were really Boshmen in the mountain, I should evidently expose my troop, by entangling it among the rocks, where it might be attacked to the greatest advantage. I was well aware of all the force of these reflections; but at the same time I was more strongly impressed with the certainty, that we could not extricate ourselves from the distress in which we were involved,



but by the discovery of some human beings, from whom we might obtain assistance: and when a single resource only presents itself, it would be folly to think of its danger.

On the way we met with an opportunity of killing, on the summits of the rocks, a few damans, or dama antelopes, which we destined for our supper. We had brought with us a small quantity of water from the spring, because we had reason to fear we should find none on the mountain, and in fact its top was a vast parched plain. We arrived on it after having laboriously climbed its sides, exposed to the scorching heat of the sun; and when there, we still suffered from its rays become nearly horizontal, without finding so much as a tree to afford us shelter. But it is needless to say, that this was not the principal care that occupied my thoughts; our first anxiety being to explore with our sight the country around, in order to discover what, with so much pains, we had come thither to seek.

The piercing eyes of my savages permitted no object they could take in to escape them. They scrutinized passes, valleys, plains, and mountains, with the strictest attention. A kind  
of

of emulation indeed seemed to have arisen among them, who should first discover a human being, or a herd of cattle. But, alas! the very exactness of their research served but to afflict us the more. We beheld, on all sides, nothing but the discouraging picture of a frightful solitude. Neither man nor beast was to be seen; and we appeared to be left alone in the world. The plaintive cry of the damiantelopes was the only sound that met our ears.

At this period the consternation became general. I myself even was destitute of hope; which at least I had hitherto preserved, amidst all our calamities. In vain did I exhort my poor desponding friends to prepare the antelopes for their repast; in vain did I urge them to drink of the water we had brought: they refused to eat, lest it should oblige them to drink, and they refused to drink, lest it should increase their sufferings.

For some time, it is to be observed, our water, having been uniformly brackish, had swelled our mouths, and afflicted us with extreme pains and additional drought, which had become our constant state of suffering. That  
of

of the preceding evening had particularly aggravated our distress; because, dying with thirst, and seduced by the appearance of a spring, we had indulged ourselves freely in drinking it. This had inflamed our tongues, our gums, and even the inside of our throats. In such a state of the fauces, it is easy to conceive, that the continued use of such water, instead of refreshing us and allaying our thirst, would tend only to increase the inflammation. Some of my Hottentots had ventured to moisten their tongues with it on the road, and it gave them the same burning sensation as a caustic would have occasioned; it is, therefore, by no means surprising, that they felt respecting it the dreadful horror which those feel for water who have been bitten by a mad dog.

At length, having perceived nothing, and the sun disappearing from the mountain, we sought for a convenient place in which to pass the night. We kindled a fire behind a large rock, that we might not be discovered by the Boshmen, and betook ourselves to rest. All my Hottentots, squatting round the fire, with their elbows resting on their knees, and their cheeks on their hands, preserved that melancholy



choly silence which is the usual effect of extreme despondency. At last they laid themselves on the ground, and prepared to sleep; seeking thus a momentary respite from evils, which would revive but the more acutely.

Like them I had stretched myself also on the earth; but not possessing the same faculty of calling at will sleep to my solace, I gave myself up to the alarming reflections which my horrible situation naturally induced. At one moment I reproached myself for that ignis fatuus of hope, which had led me to brave so many dangers to no purpose, and drawn me away more than eight leagues from my camp: at another, I contemplated with sorrow the unhappy companions of my journey, condemned to suffer every want with me: then casting my thoughts on myself, and seeing no remedy under my distress, I wished for death, and thought only on the means of hastening its approach. But the extreme of despair often borders on the extreme of happiness.

About an hour after midnight, Klaas, always the same, always thinking of me, and ever on the watch to give me some agreeable intelligence, drew near on a sudden, and, in a  
voice

voice indicating the palpitation of hope, informed me, that he perceived flashes of lightning in the horizon towards the west, and that, the clouds appearing to gather over our heads, we should infallibly have a storm. Though we had been deceived in the plain by a false joy, more cruel even than the certainty of our misfortunes, I could not avoid giving credit in spite of myself to the report of Klaas; and, half opening the cloak in which I was wrapped, to consider the appearances of this approaching storm, I perceived that it was on the point of bursting over the mountain, and that we should not fail to partake of its benefits.

It was not long before I heard the sound of some large drops of water, the welcome harbingers of a copious rain. All my senses, instantly expanding with satisfaction and joy, again unclosed themselves to life. I threw off my covering, and stretching myself on my back, with my mouth wide open caught with delight the drops which happened to fall into it. Each was the most refreshing balm to my parched tongue and burning palate. I can safely aver, that the purest pleasure I ever tasted was at that delicious moment, purchased  
by

by fo many fighs and fuch continued fuffering. It was not long before the rain poured down on all parts: for three hours it fell in torrents, its noife contending with that of the thunder, which ceafed not to roll over our heads. All my people were running to and fro in the ftorm, feeking and congratulating one another with an air of triumph, at finding themfelves thus unexpectedly bathed: they were beings re-animated: you would have faid they endeavoured to fwell out their bodies, as if to offer a larger furface to the rain, and imbibe the more of it. For my part, I found it fo agreeable to foak myfelf in like manner, that, in order to retain the grateful coolnefs more effectually, I refolved not to take off my clothes. The cold, however, of which at length I became fenfible, obliged me to depart from my refolution, and I ftripped myfelf completely, and again crept under my cloak.

So much happinefs could not end in forrow. An eaft wind arofe to difperfe and carry away from us the remains of the clouds; the fky refumed its clearnefs; and the fun, which the evening before had ferved only to parch our bodies, now feemed to rife merely to repair  
the



the damages of the storm. On awaking, each found himself a very different man; we were completely revived, and one of the first effects we experienced from this unhopèd-for change was a devouring hunger. Thus disposed, what a resource did we find in those antelopes, which the evening before we had so much despised; and what an eager appetite at once succeeded to the universal disgust we had conceived for them!

While we were employed in making the necessary preparations to dress them, I discovered with surprise, that one of my people was missing. As it was possible that he might have lost himself in the neighbourhood, I sent one of his comrades in quest of him; but he having returned without finding him, I began to be uneasy; and for this I had the more reason, as no one could tell me whether it was before or after the storm that he absented himself. Our uneasiness was soon changed into alarm, and each endeavoured to account for his disappearance. The causes they assigned were, however, the reverse of consolatory: according to some, he must have been assassinated by the Boshmen; and according to others, destroyed

VOL. II. C by

by some wild beast, probably while going in search of water.

Both these conjectures appeared to me equally improbable. We had been wandering about the mountains a whole day, without discovering any where a single Boshman, or the least trace of one. Besides, supposing a horde of these robbers to exist in some of the passes, what likelihood was there, that they could have attacked him without our perceiving it, as Jantje, which was his name, would certainly have defended himself, and called for assistance. The same reasoning would equally apply to the other supposition. Carnivorous animals inhabit only such districts as abound in game, where they find of course a ready supply of food. This was not the case here, and accordingly we had found not one ferocious animal. Thus, therefore, I was persuaded, that Jantje had neither been carried off by the Boshmen, nor devoured by a wild beast. I had far more reason to apprehend, that, wearied of the laborious and painful life he had for some time led, he had resolved to quit me, and had stolen off in the night; or that, worn out with want and fatigue, incapable of resist-

resisting any longer so many ills, he had gone, exhausted and dying, like the wild beasts, to yield his last breath in some sequestered corner.

These gloomy presages appeared to me more natural than those of my companions, yet they were not better founded. While they were contending for theirs; and I, from motives of prudence, concealed mine; they perceived Jantje running towards us, with extended arms, and making those signs usual among the savages when they have any great news, either good or bad, to announce.

On his arrival he informed me, that, the storm in the night having restored his strength, he availed himself of it to endeavour to render me a service. He had flattered himself, that the darkness would enable him to discover any fires that might be kindled in the surrounding valleys, and with this design he quitted me. “I rambled” added he, “all the  
“night, without perceiving any fire; but at  
“day-break I observed, about a league off, a  
“flock of sheep coming from a kraal, and  
“spreading over the plain. My first thought  
“was to go and speak to the keepers, of whom  
C 2 “there



“ there were three; but as I did not know them,  
“ and was alone, I thought it more prudent  
“ to come and inform you, to know how you  
“ would act.”

In the extremity to which I was reduced, nothing could be more fortunate for me, than the news announced by this Hottentot. His comrades heard the relation of his discovery with transports of joy. They squeezed his hand to thank him; they caressed him after their fashion, and requested me immediately to proceed towards the shepherds. I also, in my turn, paid him my warmest acknowledgements, and praised his acuteness, his prudence, and his zeal.

It was not enough to have escaped for the moment from the agony of thirst: it was necessary to escape, as I may say, from the desert, by finding some means of getting out of it; and in these we could be instructed only by the shepherds. Guided by Jantje, we proceeded with alacrity towards them: but, notwithstanding our general ardour, my Hottentots found here and there on their road baits to seduce them from the pursuit, in the pools of rain-water which the storm had repositied  
in

in the cavities of the rocks. They were never tired of admiring these beautiful basins of liquid crystal, the transparency of which was unclouded: they were all eager to taste of it; and if one of them discovered a new reservoir, he called his comrades, who, joining in his ecstasy, failed not to taste of it also, and found its water still more copious, more clear, and more delicious than the preceding: mere children, who seemed to intend by drinking now to quench the thirst that should occur to-morrow.

I had an interior sensation of pure delight in seeing these unfortunate Hottentots laugh and amuse themselves with our past misfortunes, and, satisfied with the present, dismiss all care for the future. My mind was fixed upon the future; but I was not inclined to disturb their tranquillity. Meanwhile one thought strongly suggested itself to me, and the hope that it conjured up in my mind completed the charm I felt in these scenes, as simple as they were affecting. The number of reservoirs we found on our road, convinced me that the storm had extended a great way: and I had every reason to conclude, that, coming from

the west, it must have watered, before it reached us, not only the plain where I had left my camp, but have filled the reservoir near which my old Swanepoel remained, with his four men. Every instant I represented to myself their joy: I depicted them also as forming the same consolatory conjectures with respect to me, and thanked them in my mind for their generous attachment.

At length we arrived at the place where Jantje had seen the flock, but since the morning it had removed, and we perceived it at a distance advancing along the ridge of a hill. I went straight forward to the shepherds, who informed us, that they were in fact part of the horde of Klaas Baster, to whom one of them offered to conduct me.

The approach of a company like mine was calculated to alarm these men; and I fancied that I perceived in them, as we drew near, symptoms of uneasiness and surprize. But I soon quieted their apprehensions, by making my people halt; and I sent forward Klaas with the shepherd who had offered to accompany us. I directed them to inform Baster, that I had brought him a letter from our common  
friend





TER





ENCAMPMENT AT THE HORDE OF KLAAS BASTER





friend Colonel Gordon, and that I, like him, was an inquisitive traveller, desirous of seeing the country.

The name of Gordon dissipated every fear. Presently I perceived my ambassador returning with a well-looking mulatto, by the side of whom was another, lower in stature, and less dignified in appearance. The former was Klaas Baster, the name of the latter was Piet. They were brothers. They accosted me with frankness, and took me by the hand in the Dutch mode; for they had acquired the manners of the Dutch, as well as their language, which they spoke extremely well. I delivered to them the Colonel's letter: but here their science was at a stand; neither of them could read; and the letter was returned to me, as soon as received.

The Colonel had desired them to do every thing for me, that might be in their power; but as he could not foresee the distress to which I should be reduced, he had of course not been able to specify the kind of service I should need. It was very easy, however, for me to supply what was wanting in the letter; and accordingly with my eyes fixed on the paper, I read to them a

long catalogue of my wants, and ventured boldly to demand of them, in the Colonel's name, all that he might have asked himself, had he known my situation.

The weight of this powerful recommendation I endeavoured to augment by other arguments, in the course of conversation. As we proceeded towards the kraal, I related to the two brothers all the disasters we had experienced since our departure from the Elephants-River; the despair to which we had been reduced for want of water, when the storm came to relieve us; and the whole series of unfortunate adventures, which had obliged me to abandon my three waggons, and to leave my people and baggage dispersed upon the road. I appeared as if greatly agitated, while I related all the obstacles that I found arising at every step: and I was really much affected; for a secret presentiment told me, that these obstacles would some day be multiplied to a degree that it would be impossible for me to overcome them.

My misfortunes seemed to interest the two brothers. They had listened to the narrative with attention, and without interrupting me: but



but when arrived near the kraal, the elder suddenly broke silence, and, striking the ground forcibly with his foot, "Do not," said he, "be cast down; in a few days your three waggons, with all your people, shall be here."

Agreeable as was this promise, it appeared to me not the less astonishing. It struck me as too difficult a task for the waggons to arrive at the mountains where we were situated; for, though they were less high than the ridge on which we had passed the night, still they were very considerably elevated above the plain. However, as my host engaged for the execution of his design, I could not avoid giving credit to its practicability. When we had entered his hut, Klaas Baster invited me to rest myself. He then renewed his promises with still more energy; adding, that at the present moment indeed he could not begin to carry them into effect, because his cattle were absent in the pastures; but the moment they returned, his brother should set off with all the oxen, and as many men as were necessary, to assist Swanepoel and his four companions, to whom they should carry provisions, and whom I should soon see.

This

This expedition would be tidings of joy to my companions in misfortune, whom I had left at the last place of our encampment. Supposing that, from my former orders, part of them would have arrived at the fountain, to which I had directed them to repair, I sent three of my people to acquaint them with it; and having done this, they were to pursue the road we had taken, between the two chains of mountains, reconnoitre Oliphants-Kop, and thence, still following the track of my waggons, proceed to inform Swanepoel and his companions, that they would soon receive assistance.

After dinner, Klaas Baster employed his people, with those of mine who were with me, to construct a hut for my use; and towards the evening his brother departed from the kraal, to execute the plan he had formed. I gave him two men armed with muskets for an escort, and also to serve as guides: besides these, as he passed the fountain, he was to take with him some more of my people; because, having to load the last waggon with such of the baggage as had been taken out of it and put into the  
pre-

preceding one, a number of hands would be necessary.

The time requisite for this journey would oblige me to pass some days at the kraal ; and it was possible, that I might be under the necessity of prolonging my stay, since I could not avoid giving my caravan, my horses, and even my oxen, if any remained alive, sufficient rest to enable them to recover from their fatigue. In this compulsory state of inaction, I had no resource but the chase. Accordingly I employed the two following days in hunting in the mountains with my host and my guide. But the evening of the second day I experienced an agreeable surprize, when, as I approached the kraal, I perceived my flag waving near the hut which had been erected for me ; my waggon and people having arrived in the course of the day. At this sight an involuntary exclamation of joy escaped me ; and hope, which had long been banished from my breast, entered it for the first time. I even found thirteen oxen and both my horses alive ; but these were all the animals, except my goats, which had survived.

For the rest, the chase in these mountains  
promised



promised to afford me neither much sport, nor any very valuable subjects of natural history. Game was very scarce in them, and I saw hardly any thing but a particular species of antelope, called by the Hottentots *kainfi*, and by the Dutch *klip-springers* (rock-leapers), of which no author has yet given a perfect description.

The *kainfi* has received from the Dutch the appellation of *klip-springer* on account of the ease with which it leaps from rock to rock; and indeed of all the antelopes there is no one equal to it in agility. It is about the size of a kid of a year old, and of a yellowish grey colour; but its hair has this peculiarity, that, instead of being round, pliable, and firm, like that of most other quadrupeds, it is flat, harsh, and so little adherent to the skin that the slightest friction makes it fall off. Nothing is more easy, therefore, than to deprive this animal of its hair: dead or alive it is the same; to rub, or even to touch the animal is sufficient. I have often endeavoured to preserve the skin with the hair on it of those I have killed, but I could never succeed; for, whatever care I took in flaying them, the fur always came off  
in

in such quantities, that the skin was not worth keeping.

Another peculiarity of this singular hair is its being extremely fragile, so that if you take a tuft of it between your fingers, and twist it with the other hand, it will break like the barbs of a feather. This property, however, belongs not exclusively to the hair of the *kainfi*; for I have observed it in the hair of other quadrupeds, which in the same manner live among the rocks.

The antelope of which I am speaking differs from the other species also in the shape of the foot, which, instead of being pointed like theirs, is rounded at the end; and as it is always accustomed, both in leaping and walking, to tread with the point of the hoof, without resting at all on the heel, it leaves a print distinguishable from that of any other antelope in Africa.

Its flesh is exquisitely flavoured, and much sought after, particularly by the hunters. Panthers and leopards too are equally fond of it; and I have been told by the Hottentots, that these animals unite several together to hunt the *kainfi*, and, when it takes refuge on the point of some steep rock, that one of them will go

to

to the bottom to wait for his prey, while the others advance, and oblige it to leap from its retreats. For my part, I cannot credit these pretended associations of animals of the tiger kind, all of which are accustomed to live solitarily, and to hunt each for himself; nor have I seen any wild beasts, except the hyæna, the jackal, and the dog, join with others of their species, march in companies, and form schemes of manœuvring, either in the discovery or pursuit of their game.

The chase of the kainfi is very amusing. It is true, it is scarcely possible to hunt it down with dogs, as it soon escapes them by means of its inconceivable agility, and gets out of their reach on the point of some detached rock, where it will remain whole hours safe from all pursuit, and suspended, as it were, above the abyss. But in this situation it is excellently placed for the arrow or the ball of the huntsman; who is commonly certain of shooting it at pleasure, though he is not always able to come at it when killed.

I have often been pleased with the excessive activity of the kainfi, and once in particular was witness to a most astonishing instance of it.



I was hunting one of these animals, when, from the nature of the place, it found itself so pressed by my dogs, as to be on the point of being run down and taken. There were apparently no means of escape; since before it was a vast perpendicular rock, by which its course was necessarily stopped. In this wall, however, which appeared to me perfectly smooth, was a little ridge, projecting at most not above two inches, which the kainfi quickly perceived, and, leaping upon it, to my great astonishment kept itself firm. I imagined, that at any rate it must soon tumble down; and my dogs too so fully expected it, that they ran to the bottom of the rock, to be ready to catch it when it fell. To hasten its fall, I endeavoured to harrass it, and make it lose its equilibrium; and for this purpose I pelted it with stones. All at once, as if guessing my design, it collected its whole strength, bounded over my head, and, falling a few paces from me, darted away with the utmost speed. Notwithstanding the rapidity of its flight, it would have been easy for me to have shot it; but its leap had so surpris'd and amus'd me, that I gave it its life. Its stratagem succeeded only with

with my dogs, who, confused at seeing it escape, did not return to me but with a species of flame.

Except the kainfi, I saw no other game throughout the whole chain of mountains, but some daffen, or dama antelopes; and the breed of these is not numerous, because the eagles, and other birds of prey, which inhabit the mountains, prevent their multiplying.

The mode of hunting observed by these carnivorous fowls, is a curious spectacle. Perched on the loftiest summits and the steepest rocks of the mountains, they watch their game from afar, and their acute sight enables them to discover it at a vast distance. If they perceive one of these antelopes among the rocks, they dart upon it with the rapidity of lightning, seize it before it has time to recover its hole, and carry it off to their eyry, either to devour it themselves, or to deliver it to the talons of their hungry young.

These vultures, and other birds of prey, engaged my attention much more than the small quadrupeds I have mentioned. Having always the increase of my collection at heart, I hoped here to meet with an opportunity of adding  
to

to it some new or interesting subjects, and my wishes were not disappointed. But how was I to get within shot of these birds without their perceiving me? And if they did perceive me, there was no probability of my coming near them. My only method was to conceal myself among the brushwood, near a place where there was plenty of dama antelopes, and to wait with patience till the birds darted on their prey. This device succeeded; and I was indebted to it for several new and scarce birds, of which I shall give a description in my ornithology.

In this district I killed, among others, a vulture, of a pale yellowish carnation (*blanc isabelle*). The Dutch planters call it *witte-kraai*, (the white crow): though it is far from being a crow, and is certainly a vulture. By the Nimitiquas it is called *ouri-gourap*; another very common bird in these mountains, of which also I shall speak hereafter, and which is allied in its character both to the vulture and the crow, and forms between them an intermediate genus. Its plumage is black; but, having a white patch on the hinder part of the neck, it has thence, in the colonies, received the ap-



pellation of *ring-bals-kraai*, (ring-necked crow). It is rare, however, at the Cape, though very abundant among the rocks in question. I have denominated it the *corbivau*.

These various excursions in pursuit of game afforded me many adventures, some of which, perhaps, would not be unamusing to the reader; but I shall only relate such as may in some degree contribute to the improvement of natural history, and this is my inducement for reciting the following particulars.

One evening, when I had returned at an early hour to the kraal, one of Klaas Baster's herdsmen came hastily to inform us, that he had observed two elephants stop on a neighbouring heath. Scarcely any news could be more interesting to me than this. It recalled to my remembrance all the pleasure I had received in my first journey, from hunting these animals in the Auteniqua country; and the two mentioned by the herdsman appearing to indicate an intention of passing the night in the place where they had been seen, I had every reason to promise myself, that I should come up with them before they quitted it. It was resolved, therefore, that we should attack them

at

at day-break; and, for this purpose, I immediately melted some lead, to cast such balls as we wanted. But Klaas Baster's fusée would not shoot straight; and, to bring it into a proper state, he spent a considerable time in firing at a mark, according to the absurd custom of the country.

More than a pound of my powder was wasted in this manner; yet this circumstance grieved me much less than the imprudence and obstinacy of the man, who could not be ignorant that the noise of this continued popping, augmented and repeated by the numerous echoes of the mountain, must alarm the elephants, and induce them to retire. This was exactly the case. The next day, guided by the shepherd, and accompanied by several of my Hottentots, we proceeded with all possible precaution to the heath: but this precaution was useless; for the two animals had quitted the place, and we saw no marks of them, except their dung and their footsteps. However, I was still not without hopes of overtaking them, as their footsteps pointed out the means of pursuing them, if I were inclined so to do; and this was the resolution I adopted.

We rambled a long while over the most tiresome ground, and had frequently to leap from one piece of rock to another, and scramble over the mouldered fragments of the mountain. With my mind less occupied, I should have enjoyed this tremendous spectacle, where exhausted nature wants strength to renovate herself. How many successive centuries have exercised their devouring teeth on these formidable barriers! Thus every part of the globe, one after another, becomes the prey of time; or rather the globe itself perpetually wastes away, and melts insensibly in the bosom of space.

After a very fatiguing walk, made up of turnings and windings, we at length perceived behind a little hill the two elephants of which we were in search: and, to add to our good fortune, the situation was so favourable, that we could approach within gun-shot without being perceived. Klaas Baster and I selected each his object. Mine, which was a female, dropped instantly. His was a male: it uttered so dreadful a cry as to make us shudder with fear, and ran two hundred paces before it fell. My Hottentots followed it; and the moment  
they



they perceived it stretched on the ground, I heard them exclaim repeatedly, and with every demonstration of joy, *poes-kop, poes-kop*. Astonished at this exclamation, the meaning of which I did not understand, I desired Baster to explain it to me. He answered, that *poes-kop* was the name of a particular breed of elephants, which had no tusks, and were very rarely to be met with; and that hence arose the shouts of joy and surprise that burst from my people. These *poes-kops*, he added, though destitute of tusks, were much more dreaded than elephants provided with them, because they were much more malicious.

After a thorough examination of these animals, I was fully convinced, that they were not a different species of elephant, as Baster had asserted, but a mere variety, or *lusus naturæ*. Experienced hunters have since informed me, that, though the *poes-kops* are very scarce, they do not fail to meet with some occasionally, and always destitute of tusks, however old they may be. That which my host had just killed had not the least appearance of tusks; and most certainly would never have had any; for, as I have already observed, the

tusks begin to be visible in elephants at the earliest age. I have in my collection two, taken from a sucking elephant, probably not more than three or four months old, which measure only two inches and a half in length. This is a peculiarity, however, in Africa only, and by no means in other countries; since it is as rare to find an elephant with tusks in the island of Ceylon, as without them at the Cape of Good-Hope. Of this fact I have been assured by persons, who have resided thirty years in the island, and were constantly present at all the elephant-hunts, which take place there at stated and regular periods. Among a hundred elephants taken on those occasions, to find two with tusks would be a phenomenon; and of those furnished with such instruments of defence, the tusks would not weigh more than fifteen or twenty pounds. The females of the country of which I am speaking never show the least vestige of any; while at the Cape of Good-Hope they are never without them of a larger or smaller size, and even the old males have formidable weapons; for it is by no means uncommon to kill one of these with tusks, each of a hundred pounds weight, and there

there have been some in the Company's store-houses weighing as much as a hundred and sixty pounds, as I have been assured by several persons of credibility, who had the charge of things of this nature.

Are the elephants of Ceylon then a different species from those of Africa? I think they are not. At the same time it is now proved, that the rhinoceros of India is of a different species from the rhinoceros of the Cape, since they have distinct characters, by which they are completely discriminated from each other: but the same circumstance remains to be shewn with respect to the elephants of the Cape and of Ceylon. The planters and Hottentots, who have had opportunities of meeting with or killing *pocs-kop* elephants, assured me they were all males. That which we had just killed was ten feet four inches high (French). To judge of its age by its grinders, which were very little worn, it must have been still very young. The female was not more than a foot shorter, and was the largest I had ever seen. Its tusks weighed twenty pounds each. In the course of my journey, however, I met with larger  
D 4 females,



females, the tusks of which weighed a third more.

This extraordinary bulk in animals inhabiting a country so sterile, and that affords only brackish water, excited in me considerable astonishment. I observed, too, that the cattle of Baſter were remarkably large and strong. This double fact led me to a very simple reflection. While I traversed, in my preceding journey, the country of the Caffres and the land of Auteniqua, I every where beheld enchanting spots, pastures always green, and magnificent forests with rivers and brooks in abundance; no country indeed could in appearance be more favourable to graminivorous animals, whether wild or tame: nevertheless they are there slow in growth, and never attain more than a middling size and stature. On the contrary, in the country in which I now was, the breeds both of wild and tame animals were extraordinarily large; notwithstanding water, besides its brackishness which I have already had too much occasion to notice, was very scarce, and its dry sands afforded only meagre plants, with a sort of  
grass

grafs called the bofshmen's grafs. Hence I was naturally led to fuppofe, that in watery countries the juices of vegetables are too aqueous and deficient in nutriment. Perhaps too the earth has veins producing different juices, more or lefs nutritious. Hitherto I had been induced to believe, that a fandy foil, of whatever kind, that of the Nimiquas for example, muft produce falts injurious to the plants growing on it, and confequently prejudicial to cattle; and that, on the contrary, the delightful countries of Auteniqua and Caffraria, the foil of which is good and well watered, muft furnifh in abundance the juices beneficial to life: but I abide by the fact, more certain than any conjectures, and leave the task of investigating its caufes to any one who may choofe to undertake it. I fhall only remark, that I have generally obferved land too much watered produce herbs that are acid, which cattle not ufed to them refuse. The colonifts term fuch foils *sure-vlakie* (four land).

Before we quitted our two elephants, I determined to extract the tusks of the female. My Hottentots begged me to carry away the chines of the animals alfo. Thefe two operations

rations consumed the remainder of the day, and obliged us to pass the night in the midst of this huge slaughter-house. Those delicious and rare morsels, the feet, were roasted as usual in the embers. Every one was active in preparing this feast, for it was long since we had favoured any thing like it. The choicest morsels being allotted for the master, while the less dainty chines gratified the more hungry, every guest falling to with much joy and appetite, and good water being plenty, nothing was wanting to this celebrated supper, but the certainty of making a similar one every day.

Thus diverting my leisure hours, I divided my days between the pleasure of hunting, and that of acquiring from the two wandering brothers more accurate information respecting the country which I intended to traverse. But the most agreeable day to me was unquestionably that on which I saw all my effects arrive at the kraal of Klaas Baster, and my people assembled around me. Every one was eager to testify his joy: every one endeavoured to outvie the rest in reciting all the anxiety he had felt on account of my dangers: and I was obliged to attend to this overflow of protesta-



tions. It was with particular pleasure that I embraced Swanepoel. The good old man had despaired of ever seeing me again, and yet had remained faithful to his post. Since my departure, he and his company had partly lived on a pafan antelope, which he had killed on its coming to drink at their reservoir. Luckily the storm, which we had experienced on the mountain, extended also to them, and insured them a provision of water for some time, by filling their cistern. They had even recovered one of my oxen, which I had left dying on the road. Relieved from its thirst, and revived by the rain, the animal had proceeded on its way, and, guided by the fires which they had kept burning, had actually rejoined them. Swanepoel had flattered himself, that he should also see again the three dogs which had quitted me; but they never appeared, and no doubt remained in the desert, where they became wild. But what gave him most uneasiness in his little camp was, the frequent attacks of the lions and hyænas. The carcases of the oxen I had left on the road had attracted by their smell a considerable assemblage of these ravenous beasts, the fierceness and number of which were  
a subject

a subject of very serious alarm to his small company.

My caravan being assembled required of me fresh cares, assiduous attention, and of course a more sedentary life. It is true, the chain of mountains not abounding with animals, a few days were sufficient to procure me every addition I could make to my collection; so that I hunted only by way of varying my occupations, or avoiding idleness; and very soon an event, which I was far from suspecting, obliged me to give it up entirely.

One day as I was ranging the valleys with my gun, I saw at a distance a female mulatto, who, mounted on an ox, which she managed gracefully, appeared to be proceeding to the kraal. She was dressed in the Hottentot mode, and was conducted by a man, who I knew belonged to the horde of Klaas Baster. As soon as her guide perceived me, he pointed me out to her, and she immediately put her animal upon the trot to overtake me. According me in Dutch, she alighted, and requested me to accompany her to the kraal. It was a sister of my host, yet unmarried, and living in a distant horde. On the day of my arrival, he had

had sent an exprefs to his fiftter to inform her of it; and fhe, having her curiofity excited, haftened to fee me. She was a very charming woman; not poffeffed indeed of the flender fhape or ingenuous fimplicity of Narina; on the contrary, a flight degree of corpulency was prejudicial to the agility of her motions, and fhe had all the airs and coquetry incident to the remembrance of diftinguifhed birth; for fhe was not born a favage, and no doubt laid claim to a far fuperior nature.

Her father was an European, who in his youth had gone over to the Cape, and who, firft in the fervice of the company, and next of a farmer, had contrived, by his labour and induftry, to form to himfelf a pretty confiderable eftablifhment, about five-and-twenty or thirty leagues off, on the banks of the *Groene-Rivier* (green river). At firft he had cohabited with a Hottentot woman, by whom he had Klaas Bafter, Piet Bafter, and their fiftter. But growing vain in proportion as he grew rich, he became afhamed of his wife, and feparated from her to marry a white. The latter brought him feveral children, two of whom, boys, the one twenty, the other twenty-two years



years of age, lived in the same house with him ; but being, as well as their mother, at enmity with him, they contrived to lead him a most wretched life.

These young men were not only ashamed of their mulatto brothers, but had so persecuted and harassed them, as to oblige them to flee from home. Their sister had repaired from choice to the Hottentot horde of her mother. The two Basters, attached to each other by ties of friendship as well as consanguinity, were unwilling to separate, and had first formed a settlement together more to the south in the plain. They had cleared successively two excellent spots, from both of which their relations had driven them by force, at the same time killing part of their cattle. Frequently they had been savage enough even to beat and wound poor Klaas, who was the principal object of their animosity. At length, to shun their fury, he had agreed with his brother to come and settle among the mountains, where he hoped to be more easily concealed. Having both married Hottentot women, they formed, with their family and the people attached to them, who were all relations, a horde composed

composed of sixteen or eighteen huts. Klaas, however, lived in perpetual disquietude; always afraid of being discovered and surpris'd by his cruel brothers: and this was the cause of the alarm which the shepherds had testified, when I appeared with my troop.

As his brothers resided at the Namero, Klaas was in some measure at their discretion; and, to say the truth, I was astonish'd at his remaining in their neighbourhood, since he expected to have his days finish'd by a musket ball, as he himself assur'd me, which would have happen'd long ago had they not more than once miss'd their aim. Pitying his situation, I was desirous of bringing about a reconciliation between him and his family, as a return for the services he had rendered me; and, as I was to pass through the district they inhabited, I form'd the design of effecting this purpose. Its success appear'd so certain, that I hesitated not to offer my mediation to the unfortunate Baster, and went so far as even to pledge myself for the ratification of a treaty of peace, if he would but accompany me. He appear'd sensible of the motive that prompt'd my offers; but he despair'd of the possibility of mollifying the  
the

the hatred of his implacable relations, and requested of me, as a particular favour, if I should see them on my journey, not to mention his name, and even to conceal from them that I had seen him.

The sister, both from her natural disposition, and the mode of life she had embraced, appeared to be perfectly happy. Her days, while I was with her, were spent in frolic and merriment. She was above all extremely curious. My waggons and equipage so occupied her attention, that she was continually examining them. I had not a piece of furniture or a single implement of which she would not know the name and the use. To please her, I was obliged to open and empty all my boxes; and she suffered not the least bundle or the smallest drawer to escape. Respecting myself, also, she was inexhaustible in her questions; and frequently put to me such simple and frank ones, as almost to render me curious in my turn. My beard, which as yet was not very large, was a subject of singular amusement; she handled it without ceremony, toyed with me in all ways, and told me, that in her eyes I was handsomer than the handsomest Hottentot.



tot. I thought her also very well for the place where we were, and indeed she was the Venus of the country. The scantiness of her attire left great part of her charms exposed to view; but she thought no more of indelicacy in exhibiting, than of modesty in concealing them. A man of less temperance would have had no favour to ask, and no denial to fear.

Meanwhile it appeared strange to me, that, being descended from a white parent, and having it in her power to live among whites, and settle herself in a habitation like her father's, she should renounce such an advantage. This remark I made to her, and asked what motive she had for preferring the wandering life of the Hottentots, and adopting a caste less respectable than that in which she was born. Her answer astonished me. It was rational, and appeared to originate from a sort of native philosophy which I certainly did not expect to find in so giddy and volatile a head.

“It is true I am the daughter of a white man,” said she, “but my mother is a Hottentot. Thus allied by birth to two different races, I had to choose with which of them I would live. You know the pro-  
VOL. II. E “found

“ found contempt which the whites entertain  
 “ for the blacks, and even for those of a mixed  
 “ breed like myself. To settle among them  
 “ was to expose myself to daily disgrace and  
 “ affronts, or to be reduced to live alone, soli-  
 “ tary and unhappy; while among the Hot-  
 “ tentots I was sure of finding a welcome, and  
 “ of being treated with friendship and esteem.  
 “ What, let me ask, would you have done in  
 “ my place? For my part, between certain  
 “ friends, and undoubted enemies, I saw no  
 “ room to hesitate. I preferred happiness to  
 “ pride. Among your planters I should have  
 “ been overwhelmed with humiliations: a-  
 “ mong those of my mother’s complexion I am  
 “ happy. Esteemed and respected, and per-  
 “ fectly free, I am in want of nothing. Else-  
 “ where I should have shed torrents perhaps of  
 “ tears: here I laugh all the day long; and  
 “ you may judge from my disposition whether  
 “ I am content.”

Thus sagaciously did my pretty mulatto  
 reason; and if her playfulness and frivolity  
 sometimes teased me, to balance the account I  
 was frequently astonished at her good sense.

One morning as she was rambling round  
 my

my waggons and tents, she suddenly called to me aloud, and putting into my hand an egg not yet cold, "Here," said she, "this belongs to you. But let it teach you to be less negligent, and do not again let it be necessary for me to wait upon your heels, and give you lessons of vigilance."

The egg had been found in a bush, where it had been laid by the hen, which, when I set out upon my second journey, I had given as a companion to my cock. In reality, neither I nor my people suspected, that, after a journey in which she had so much suffered from want and fatigue, a few days rest were sufficient to recover her strength, and enable her so soon to give me eggs. This, however, was certainly not the first. At least I saw near the nest fragments of broken shells, which proved that others had been laid.

It was possible, that a weasel or some such animal had come unknown to us, and devoured the produce of my hen; but there was a culprit nearer at hand that might be suspected with more appearance of probability. This was my ape. Such is the effect of a reputation deservedly lost. If any crime was committed



to which gluttony was the incentive, if any theft of eatables was discovered, Kees was instantly accused, and the accusation was seldom unfounded.

On this occasion I was desirous of satisfying myself whether I was right in my conjecture: and the next morning I kept on the watch, till the hen should inform me by her cries of having laid. Kees was then on my waggon: but no sooner did he hear the first cackle of the hen, than he leaped upon the ground, and was running to the egg. Stopped unexpectedly by my presence, he affected a careless attitude, balanced himself awhile on his hind-legs, and, winking his eyes with a silly air, walked backward and forward several times before me; in short, he employed all his cunning to take off my attention, and deceive me respecting his design. These hypocritical manœuvres confirmed me in my suspicions; and presently I was convinced of the truth, when, to deceive him in my turn, pretending to turn my back on the bush, I saw him dart towards it and bear away the egg. I ran after him, and arrived just at the moment when, having broken the shell, he was swallowing its contents. It  
will

will readily be presumed, that the knave did not escape unpunished for his crime. Yet, so incorrigible is a perverse disposition, that my correction, severe as it was, had no effect in curing him of the practice.

An ape is in reality an intractable animal. It is true he possesses such powers of instinct, that he can often render important services; as mine did to me on more than one occasion. But if he has invention, and becomes useful, it is always for himself and not for you that he labours. Certainly no animal upon earth is so dexterous, or perhaps so artful. Yet if you attempt to employ him in any exercise or any work which is not voluntary, you will find him dull and awkward. It is only by dint of hunger and blows that you can discipline him to certain tricks; and of some faults that are natural to him it is impossible to correct him. He is lascivious, gluttonous, thievish, revengeful, and passionate; and if he has not the vice of lying, the savages say it is because he does not choose to talk.

Persuaded that I should never change the nature of mine, and never get an egg, unless I kept him chained up all the morn-

ing, I endeavoured to beat him at his own weapons. For this purpose I trained one of my dogs to run to the nest the moment the hen gave notice of having laid, and bring me the egg without breaking it. This was done in a few days: but Kees, when the signal was given, ran as well as he to the nest. A contest then arose, and often it was not the dog, though the stronger of the two, that carried the day. If the dog was successful, he ran with joy to bring me his prize, while the ape followed growling and threatening with his teeth, till I had taken the egg; when he appeared to be consoled for the loss of his prize, by finding that his antagonist did not enjoy it. If Kees was the victor, he ran up into a tree, and, having swallowed the egg, threw the shell at the dog, as if by way of defiance, who returned with a look of shame that informed me of his misadventure.

These details may appear trifling to many who will read my work solely to criticise it; if indeed they do not criticise without reading it: but to others, perhaps, they will be more useful than those tiresome descriptions, those endless accounts which are frequently given of an



infect, or a part of an infect, and the dimensions without number of an animal. To me it is pleasing to begin my journeys again; to think, to feel, and observe all that I have seen, thought, and felt in the course of them; leaving to great geniuses to contemn these trifles: and I take the greater pleasure in them, because they keep me at my own level. Such at least has ever been my plan—Plan did I say? I have none: nor could I ever discover what science there is in writing a book. Mine, however, if it is one, will always have this great advantage in my opinion, that of not being made on purpose; and this is the reason why I would not even think of it. I have so often talked over my travels, that it is not difficult for me to write them: and any one of my friends who has a good memory, and has heard me give an account of them, might easily and in the same manner write them for me. Such are the whole of my literary pretensions.

As to the most celebrated part of travels, new observations and discoveries, something of the kind (for such there must necessarily be) will be found in the particular descriptions of the new subjects I acquired in Africa, which I

shall soon lay before the public; but let no one expect, as I have already observed, geometrico-microscopical demonstrations. I shall enlarge with pleasure on the manners and habits of the animals with which I have lived: the most simple observation of this nature will afford us more happy and certain conclusions, than the examination of their smoking and dumb entrails;—that absolute quackery, calculated to deceive its ignorant admirers, and often, which is still worse, the learned themselves.

I shall more particularly attend to the essential parts, and of those parts shall consider chiefly the forms. With regard to the animal altogether, that is to say its external appearance, a simple description, assisted by an accurate figure, will always be sufficient to distinguish it, and prevent it from being confounded with another: but God forbid that I should ever employ my time in measuring the length, breadth, and thickness of every tooth of a quadrupede, in giving the exact dimensions of the apertures of the eyes and of the nostrils, the magnitude of the hole of each vertebre, the circumference and diameter of the anus, the thickness of the rectum, the  
size

size of every intestine, and the comparative length of the hair in all the different parts of the body. So much science is assuredly beyond my sphere!

I arrived at the horde the 23d of July, and had been there eighteen days. I began to languish with impatience, and was desirous of resuming my journey; but eager as I was to be gone, I had thought this stay necessary to rest and recruit my cattle. My horses had already resumed their strength and fire. Of thirteen oxen which my people had brought with them, seven were tolerably recovered; but there were six of which I despaired. There is no cloven-footed animal in which the vital powers are more slowly renovated than in the ox. Having no cutting teeth in the upper jaw, it can pluck up the grass only with its lips, which, being thick, will not allow it to crop the short and succulent blades of the young shoots. If fatigue does not leave it sufficient strength to ruminate, when it meets with forage of indifferent quality, its stomach, for want of this second and necessary mastication, has to exercise its digestive faculty on  
imperfectly



imperfectly comminuted grafs, incapable of affording due nourishment.

My people, well fatisfied with the idle and quiet life they led in the horde, entreated me to remain a few days longer, to give my sick oxen time to be perfectly recovered. But my patience was exhausted: I preferred rather to leave thefe oxen behind me: and though I had every reason to expect a continuance of drynefs and misfortunes, as my journey was in a contrary direction to that of the feafons; though prudence directed me to return to the Cape; and though there was fcarcely any thing but falfe fhame which induced me to perfift in my fcheme, I refolved to refume my path, and purfue my excursion to the Nimiquas.

At the fame time my health was far from being in a perfect ftate, and I ftill felt fome inconveniency from an accident which had confined me a week to my tent.

Among all the remarkable plants of this canton, that which moft fixed my attention, was a fpecies of thorny geranium with large flowers, which the Nimiquas call *nourap*. This geranium has a peculiar property: all its internal

ternal part completely decays in time, while the bark remains unaffected. In this state its trunk and branches are perfectly hollow: the bark assumes a certain degree of transparency, and the colour of fine Flanders glue; and, if thrown upon the fire, it does not burn like wood, but shrivels up and twists like a piece of catgut.

Some of these geraniums bear white flowers, others yellow: but they are only varieties of the same species; for I have found flowers of both colours on the same stock.

Among those with which I was surrounded I found a very beautiful one, of which I made a drawing; and when I had finished it, I imprudently threw the original out of my tent, near my waggon. At night, called up by a natural necessity, I alighted from my waggon, and, not thinking of the geranium, leaped barefoot upon it, so that one of my feet was plunged in its thorns up to the ankle. The pain I felt was so great, that I gave a loud scream, which brought all my people about me. They found me supporting myself on one leg, while the other was nailed to the thorny trunk, without my daring to make the least

least motion to extricate it. The worst of the affair was, I did not know how to free myself from this implement of torture ; for I could not move the thorns from my foot on one side without plunging them deeper into it on the other. At length they lifted me from the ground, reclining me a little in a horizontal posture, and then tore away the plant at one jerk.

This was a severe operation ; yet I bore it patiently, believing it would be the last of my sufferings, and that nothing more would be wanting to my cure, than to stay the inflammation. With this view I directed my foot and ankle to be wrapped up in a poultice of herbs and milk, which the Hottentots made for me ; and went to bed, not doubting but I should be able to walk as usual the next day. To my great astonishment, however, the day following I found my sufferings much increased ; and my foot, leg, and even thigh were so extremely swollen, that I could not in the least move them. Klaas Baster and his Hottentots, seeing me in this state, asserted that the plant was poisonous, and that nothing could cure me but baths of warm milk. These  
I em.



I employed, and I remained a week without quitting my bed. On the eighth day the swelling was completely gone: but, though I could stand on my foot, the leg was of a greenish-brown hue; and more than three months elapsed before it resumed its natural colour. My people called the plant, after my accident, *gift-doorn* (poison-thorn).

Such was the state of my health when I purposed to depart. Every cause of uneasiness assailed me at once, and on all sides I beheld subjects of alarm. I had procured by barter from Klaas thirty sheep, to form a new flock. Desirous that, like my other animals, they should acquire a habit of not wandering from my camp on my journey, I ordered them to be kept with my goats near my waggons and tents for some days. But sheep were not the cattle of which I had most need. How could I set out on my expedition with only seven oxen fit for service, when I wanted three complete teams?

The horde was too far distant from any settlement for me to flatter myself with buying any in the neighbourhood. In reality I had depended upon Baster: but he, having  
begun

begun to clear some ground for the purpose of sowing the grain necessary for the consumption of his horde, wanted all his oxen. The utmost I could obtain from him by the most urgent sollicitation was one team. "Do you see those lofty mountains of Camis?" said he to me: "you will there find as many as you want. Your conveyance thither shall be my business. I will send my brother to conduct you: he shall take with him as many men and oxen as your waggons require; and when he has put you into a situation to procure fresh cattle, he shall then return."

Circumstanced as I was, I could not desire a more satisfactory offer, for it afforded me the means of continuing my journey. What indeed could Bafter do more? Or what more could I ask of him? Yet I had still another wish at heart, and that was to take my host himself with me. I was going to traverse the country of the Great Nimiquas; and I knew that he had visited those people, was known to most of their hordes, spoke their language fluently, and of course might be infinitely serviceable to me in my intercourse with them. The difficulty was to prevail on him to accompany me.

me. I had often felt his pulse upon the subject, but had found him always draw back; notwithstanding he had already travelled thither twice, once with Colonel Gordon, and again with the English traveller Paterfon \*. At length I attempted to gain him by means of his sister, his sister-in-law; and his wife. These I brought over to my party by a few presents; and they succeeded so well, that he had nothing farther to object but the fear of being met and attacked by his brothers. But upon representing to him that, surrounded as he would be by my people, and under the protection of my arms and theirs, he had nothing to apprehend; and assuring him, that if they dared approach my camp, or attempt any act of violence, I would write instantly to Colonel Gordon, to demand their being punished by the government; he at last yielded to my request.

Our terms were soon settled. They were four rixdollars a month, as much tobacco as he chose, and hardware sufficient to purchase a few oxen when we should arrive among the

\* Who has published an account of his travels, which has been translated into French.

Nimiquas.



Nimiquas. However, though he accepted these terms without hesitation, and even without asking me to make any addition to them, I perceived that he was by no means flattered with them. In reality they were little to a man possessed of eight hundred sheep, and more than two hundred oxen, and who consequently, in his situation, might be deemed rich. But when I offered him a daily allowance of brandy also, he could not contain himself for joy. Living, as he did, far from the colony, he had had few opportunities of drinking this kind of liquor, yet was he passionately fond of it: during my stay with him I had occasionally treated him with a little; and of all the means of operating upon his mind, this was the most powerful.

He added one condition, however, to our agreement, which was, that I should conduct him back again to his horde: a condition which a little thwarted my views; for though the obstacles which were continually arising made me almost despair of the success of my journey, I still retained the wish to accomplish it. Meanwhile I reflected, that if these obstacles in the end compelled me to trace back my steps,

it

it would cost me much less inconvenience to bring Baster back with me.

On the supposition that I should do this, the family requested me to employ my interest with the governor on my return, in behalf of his horde, and to obtain for them the liberty of carrying arms, which are forbidden to all the Hottentots, yet were necessary to these, to defend them not only from the incursions of the Boshmen, but from the attacks of their relations, who had already often disarmed them. To this request I acceded as inconsiderately as I had done to the former; though indeed it by no means exposed me to a breach of promise, for if I should not have it in my power personally to solicit this favour, I could at least do it in writing, and on parting with Baster could give him letters of recommendation to Colonel Gordon and the new fiscal.

In the mean time I gave the horde ten pounds of powder, with ball in proportion, and left them a fusée for their defence during the absence of Baster. This gift was the more agreeable, as the horde had long been in want of ammunition. I also made some present to every individual belonging to it: the women,

in particular, were not forgotten ; but the sister asked one favour of me for which I was not prepared. Three days after my arrival at the horde, one of my bitches had brought me a litter of eight whelps. As I am firmly of opinion, that nature never errs, and that a mother can afford nourishment for all the young she produces, however many they may be, unless particular circumstances deprive her of food, I did not destroy any of these whelps ; they might hereafter become useful to me, and replace both those I had already lost, and those of which future accidents might deprive me. The mulatto was about to quit me ; and, as a last testimony of friendship, she begged of me one of my puppies, which at first I refused ; but she was so urgent, that I was obliged to comply with her request. How indeed could I refuse the sister of two men, to whom I and my people owed our lives ?

On the tenth of August I resumed my journey. My intention was to pass the night at *Poes-kop-Heuwel* ; which was the name we had given to the place where the elephants were killed. The carcases of these animals were not yet wholly consumed ; and whether

it



it was the sight or the smell of their remains, my oxen took fright, and were so unruly in their traces, that it became necessary to unharness them as quickly as possible. The instant they were at liberty, they set off on a gallop towards the horde, and some of our company were obliged to run after them to bring them back.

Already, in the morning, when they were first put to the waggons; they had shown themselves restive, and it was not without difficulty that we harnessed them. The fatal consequences that might arise from such dangerous freaks presented themselves to my mind, and made me still more regret the loss of my old teams. To how many accidents should I be exposed from animals so badly broken in! This was a new subject of inquietude. Happily, however, all I suffered this day was in apprehension. These cattle, which gave me so much reason to fear for my people and my waggons, soon became gentle, and even travelled with ease twenty-four leagues in the next three days, across mountains and through execrable roads, where we only once met with water, and that horribly bad. Fortunately we found some in the trenches of

Black-Thorn river (*Swarte-Doorn Rivier*), where we encamped on the third day at noon. This was bordered with very large mimofas all along its course.

Having, while the cattle were unharneffing, proceeded forwards to examine the place, I saw, with equal joy and surprife, a waggon guarded by fome Hottentots. I accosted, and put feveral questions to thefe men refpecting the motives that brought them thither. But my joy was foon converted into uneafinefs, when they informed me, that the waggon belonged to Piet Pinar, who had taken them into his fervice, and with whom they were juft arrived. Pinar was the great hunter, the famous ranger of woods, of whom I have before fpoken, and who is mentioned in Paterfon's work. He had travelled with Colonel Gordon, and at the moment of my departure from the Cape, he had come and offered to accompany me alfo: but his character had induced me to refufe him, for the reafons I have elfewhere given, and it was with real forrow I now met him on my way.

However, he rendered me one kind of fervice. As he gave out at the Cape, that he  
was

was going to hunt elephants among the great Nimiquas, Serrurier, who succeeded Boers in the office of fiscal, had hoped that he would fall in with me, either on the road or among that people, and had accordingly given him a letter and a packet for me.

The packet came from Holland, and was sent by Temminck, who, desirous of having in his collection a peculiar species of hornbill, requested me to procure it for him, adding, that it was to be met with in Africa, and that he had inclosed me the beak of one that I might not mistake it. Temminck was perfectly right. The hornbill which he mentioned was in reality an African bird, and pretty frequently seen on the eastern coast: but it is so wild, distrustful, and difficult to approach, that it must always be very scarce in collections. During the whole of my first journey, I had it in my power to shoot only a single one, which was in the country of Auteniqua: and, as if I had foreknown my friend's wish, I had been eager to pay him the compliment of it, and had already sent it him by Boers. The desire expressed in his letter enhanced in my eyes the value of this hornbill,



and I felt a pleasure in imagining, that at the very moment, perhaps, when I received his request, the bird he so much wanted was actually in his hands.

The news which Temminck sent me of Holland, and Serrurier of the Cape, were highly gratifying in my present situation, but I would rather have received them by other hands than those of Pinar. My meeting with him seemed to forebode me no good; I was alarmed at his being in my neighbourhood; and my fears, as will be seen, were but too well founded.

Though Pinar had followed a different track, his journey had not been more fortunate than mine: like me he had experienced the calamity of drought and want of forage; but as he had but one waggon and few people, he had extricated himself from them with less difficulty. I was obliged to listen to the tiresome and endless tale of his prowess, with which I will not trouble the reader, for never was story told with more prolixity; though, after the service he had just rendered me, I could not avoid hearing it.

According to his own account, he was re-  
pairing

pairing to the country of the great Nimiquas, with no other design than that of hunting elephants, and trading in ivory. But I knew the adventurer too well, to trust his declarations. Besides, I had seen of what his baggage consisted; and being myself also a traveller, I knew that elephants were not killed with hardware, tobacco, and brandy. His real and sole object was to trade in cattle; and he had talked of hunting schemes only to blind the eyes of Administration, and avert suspicion. This requires to be explained.

The trade with the savages in cattle is among those which the Company has reserved exclusively to itself; and this species of traffic is prohibited under very severe penalties. But in countries so remote from the superintendance of Government, how is it to be prevented? And when it wants even the power to enforce the execution of its other laws, is it to be expected that those relating to the revenue should remain unfringed? The prohibition in question too is more easily eluded, because no one is particularly charged with enforcing it; and because every body besides is interested in

the fraud, so that certainty of profit is added to that of impunity.

Meanwhile, were these contraband traders guilty only of infringing the fiscal laws, the business would be a trifle. But what daring iniquities, what horrible crimes, do they not commit! A few colonists, well armed, assemble together: then, falling suddenly on some solitary horde, they compel those who compose it to bring them all their cattle, from which they select such as may suit them, and give in return what they think proper. What can poor savages, to whom fire-arms are unknown, do against such formidable banditti? If they attempt to resist, or even venture to complain, their lives are in danger. Accordingly, no sooner is it known that a party of such smugglers is out upon an expedition, than they hasten to remove their herds, which they send into the woods and mountains, where they keep them concealed. This is the only mode they have of preserving them from plunder, and to this the savages all have recourse.

Often have I arrived at a horde without  
find-



finding so much as a single beast ; for, judging of me by others, they had taken me for one of those pretended cattle-merchants, whose presence is a real calamity. To remove these unfavourable prejudices, it was requisite for me to remain some time with the savages, that they might know me better, or learn from my people the motive of my travels. When this was done, their confidence revived : they related to me the abominable crimes perpetrated by the wretches with whom I had been confounded : I saw their cattle re-appear ; and, if I wished to purchase any, I was left to make choice among them, and they were all at my disposal. I dealt on honourable terms, and paid honestly for what I purchased ; and at my departure I had the consolation to hear those lips, which had hitherto bestowed execrations only on the whites, confess that there were some among them who did not deserve to be hated.

I certainly did not suspect Pinar to be one of these purchasers at the sword's point. No doubt he meant to act differently, as he was the only man of his colour, and carried with him the  
three

three articles of merchandise particularly in request among the savages; hardware, brandy, and tobacco. Yet I feared the disorder and neglect of discipline which such a man might introduce into my company; and he soon convinced me that my apprehensions were not without foundation. He had brought with him three barrels of that inferior kind of brandy, which is made and sold by the colonists: but, from the fondness he showed for it, his cargo would be considerably diminished before he reached the Nimiquas. That very evening he took such a dose, as completely to drown the little share of sense he possessed; and, in this state, his casks were left at the discretion of the Hottentots, who regaled my whole caravan with their contents, so that before night both his people and mine were as drunk as himself. In the midst of these disgusting revels, Pinar, though unable to speak plain, endeavoured to seduce my Hottentots, and persuade them to quit my service for his. The sight of the three barrels that were abroach was a powerful temptation; and I observed an instant when their ancient attachment to me was

on

on the point of yielding to the brandy, which, by changing masters, was likely to be in their power.

The next morning at day-break they recommenced their drinking, and plied it so stoutly, that, before the cattle were harnessed, all my people were drunk again, Klaas excepted, and three or four of his comrades as prudent as himself. It was necessary, however, to set off; and, to preserve my waggons from accident, I had no resource but giving the direction of them to those who still retained their senses. Swanepoel himself, who had hitherto merited so much praise, was not in a condition to be of the least service; for, unable to resist the invitations of Pinar, he had drank with him even more freely than the rest. In the mean time I refrained from testifying my displeasure, till we were on the road. Mortified at my reproaches, he was determined to convince me, that he could drive my waggon as well as ever. In vain did I order him to keep off: he came up staggering, and endeavoured to jump upon the seat; but his hands and feet failing him at once, he fell, and while I endeavoured to stop the waggon with my cries, the fore-wheel went  
dia-



diagonally over his body, and the hinder would have crushed his head to pieces, if he had not mechanically moved out of its direction.

I supposed him to be killed; and my people, thinking the same, were running to take him up, when I saw him unexpectedly rise of himself, saying, at the same time, with a smile, "There's no harm done." "Wretch!" cried I, "you will soon find there is:" and I had scarcely spoken, when he fell senseless on the ground. I ordered him to be laid upon the mattresses of my waggon; the motion of which soon brought him to himself. Then it was he felt his pains, which, augmented by the shaking and jolting of the vehicle, made him cry out most piteously. It was, however, impossible for me to stop. We had not found the least pasturage on the borders of the river near which we had encamped. Bafter expected to be more fortunate near Green-River, which was about three leagues farther, and we hastened to get thither: but we found this river as little abounding in water, and as destitute of herbage as the other; yet so fatigued were our cattle that we were obliged to halt to give them a little rest.

I took

I took advantage of this stay to examine the state of the wounded Hottentot, and see whether any assistance could be given him. When my people had undressed him, I found he had two ribs broken, the fractured parts of which formed even prominences under the skin. Thus melancholily circumstanced, what was to be done? A surgical operation, dressings according to the rules of art, and a proper regimen were necessary; whereas I had neither skill nor medicaments, and was obliged, therefore, to consign to nature this mangled being, or, in other words, to suffering and death. He groaned horribly, and, wringing his hands, begged me to shoot him through the head with a pistol, to end his torments. His situation pierced me to the heart: but my pity was soon converted into anger, when I learnt, that, while I was absent for a moment, he had drank half a bottle of brandy, which one of Pinar's men brought to him privately.

How did I then curse the unlucky fortune, which had thrown me in the way of this despicable hunter, whose intemperance I deemed the certain cause of death to Swanepoel, and whose presence might occasion still other dif-

orders in my troop! What satisfaction would it have afforded me, to have been able to effect a separation, by remaining on the banks of the Green-River, and suffering him to proceed before me! But this separation was impossible; for the bed of the river having no water, it was necessary to seek one that could supply us. Besides, as two of my teams did not belong to me, and were lent but to convey me to Mount Namero, it was incumbent on me to remember, that they were necessary to the two brothers for the cultivation of their land, and of consequence that I ought to restore them the moment it was practicable.

One reflection, however, comforted me under the disorders to which I was so painfully a witness. If I had reason to dread the presence of Pinar, mine was perhaps still more to be dreaded by him. My frank and decided temper would not suffer me to be silent respecting any equivocal action or culpable conduct. In the evening I had openly testified my displeasure towards this drunkard: before we set off, I renewed my reproaches, in the most firm and peremptory tone; and I observed that, since our encampment, he was abashed and embarrassed



raffed in my presence, and appeared to shun me; which led me to believe, that, if I should be obliged to proceed some time longer with him, he would keep at a distance from me and my people, and would probably endeavour, as soon as circumstances would allow, to quit me entirely.

The next day we resumed our journey, still following the course of the river. After travelling four hours and a half, we found a considerable cavity in its bed, which, happily for us, contained water, and indeed sufficient for the two caravans and all our cattle. We found in it also a few turtles, which my divers caught, and which afforded us a temporary refreshment, equally pleasing and salubrious. The place where we stopped is called by the Hottentots *Gariche*.

Swanepoel was still in pain, and desirous of having some rhinoceros's blood to drink. This is a medicine in repute, I know not why, both among the colonists and the savages. It is reckoned excellent for luxations, fractures, and inward hurts in general: but rhinoceroses are not to be killed when you please, and I had none at present at my command. For want

of this blood, the patient drank plentifully of brandy, which Pinar assured him would of itself cure him.

As I had supposed, that, after such an accident, brandy would always be held by him in detestation, I was surpris'd to see him indulge in such fearful intemperance. However, I shut my eyes on his excesses, considering him as one of those patients, who, being given over by the physician, are refused nothing, because it is presumed nothing can do them any farther injury.

Who would believe that this detestable regimen should have operated the effect which Pinar had predicted? At any rate it proved not to be injurious. The reader may argue as he pleases on this miraculous cure; and certainly I should myself be far from recommending in a similar case the same practice, notwithstanding the success with which I saw it attended; but whether it was the effect of the brandy, or whether nature alone, and the energy of the vital powers, united and consolidated the fractured bones, I cannot help declaring that my old drunkard was perfectly cured, without dressing, without bandage, with-

without any care, that he resumed his office six weeks subsequent to the accident, and never experienced afterwards the slightest pain.

Our course from the Green River had brought me nearer to Mount Namero, and we began to find ourselves approaching the mountains of Camis, which majestically rose to our view, eastward of the country where Baster had told me I should find a supply of as many oxen as I wanted. I was accordingly eager to arrive there; but having met in our way with a charming spring, named *Oog-fontyn* (Eye-fountain), the copious, sweet, and limpid waters of which promised us an agreeable station, the two brothers, seduced by the coolness of the place, proposed to me to encamp there; and, notwithstanding my impatience, I complied with their wishes. In the evening, some Hot-tentots of the neighbourhood, coming to fetch water from the spring, were struck with the extreme fatigue of our oxen, and assured me, that cattle so jaded would never draw my wag-gons to the top of the Namero, which I intended to cross. This remark could not fail to give me uneasiness; and I therefore asked them what in this case it was best for me to



do. "A little way off," said they, "in the  
"mountains, is the habitation of Van der  
"Westhuysen; send one of your company  
"thither for a fresh team or two; he can sup-  
"ply you, and certainly will not refuse."

At the name of Van der Westhuysen the two Basters trembled and turned pale: it was in reality their father; and the dangers, which they had supposed at a distance, were thus announced to them as ready to fall on their heads. The old man had been thought by them to be on the banks of the Green River, or at its mouth, where lay his possessions; but the extreme drought and want of water had compelled him to retire with his cattle into the mountains, where he had another settlement. They were afraid, if they accompanied me thither, they should meet their white brothers, and be exposed to fresh insults and injuries; and so forcibly were they struck with this apprehension, that, without reflecting on their engagement, or troubling themselves about what would become of me, they resolved instantly to return with their cattle, and to leave me, thus destitute, in my camp, with my teams, my waggons, and my people. I might easily  
have

have convinced them of the improbity of such conduct: but I chose rather to remove their fears, by promising them not to take up my abode with their relations, nor remain at the settlement longer than was necessary; and that in the mean time I would keep them concealed in my tents, so that their presence should not be known. My promises quieted their minds: they consented to keep their engagement, and remained with me.

Conformably to the advice given me by the Hottentots at the spring, I sent an express to Van der Westhuysen, to procure a relay of cattle, and the next day I received from him the teams that I wanted. When arrived on the height, I stopped, and encamped at a distance from the house; and the two Basters, while I went to pay my visit to their relations, took the necessary precautions to remain concealed in my camp.

They already knew me by report; and Pinar besides, who had gone on before me, and called upon them, had given them my history. They received me with the greatest civility, complained of me that I did not come, like Pinar, and take up my abode with them, and re-

newed their offers of rendering me every service in their power. The family consisted of two sons, one of whom was six feet high\*, and two daughters, one tall and handsome, the other an idiot. Three of the children only and the mother took part in the conversation. The good man of the house, seventy years of age, was reckoned as nobody, and sat in a corner listening to what was said without uttering a word. Under the pretence of sparing his lungs, which were at times a little asthmatic, she had long since prescribed for him the regimen of silence; and whenever he put in a word, he was instantly told, in a tone not the most conciliating, that he would fatigue himself, and had better hold his tongue.

The exchange of his Hottentot wife for a white one had proved but a sorry speculation, for which he had paid dearly. Governed from the beginning by this imperious tyrant, he was become her entire slave; and, in consequence of this weakness, had even been obliged to join in the conspiracy she had formed, in concert with her sons, against the children of his

\* French measure: six feet and half English. T.



former marriage. Ashamed of the imbecile part he acted in his house, my presence appeared to embarrass him. Now and then, however, he ventured to bestow upon me a smile of kindness; but it was always by stealth, and in a way that plainly indicated to me his fear of being observed by his wife.

He was born in Germany, and I spoke his language. To relieve his anxiety, as well as from respect to his character as master of the house, I wished to treat him as of some importance in the conversation, and I asked him in German various questions respecting his country, the time in which he had quitted it, the circumstances which had brought him to Africa, and other matters that might be interesting to him. He appeared sensible of my attention, and an expression of joy spread itself over his countenance; but his wife, afraid, perhaps, either that he was talking of her, or that he received more amusement than she wished, interrupted our discourse to make me enter into a conversation about France. She pretended to be a French woman by descent. Her mother, she said, was a native of Provence, and she had herself, though born in Africa,

been educated according to the Languedoc manner; to demonstrate which, she uttered certain phrases in an unintelligible jargon that she pretended to be French. Probably she understood no more of this jargon than myself; but she affected from time to time to make use of it; and, persuaded that the most decisive proof she could give of her birth was the accent of her country, she introduced so much of this pretended provincial dialect, she made efforts so ridiculous, and such strange contortions of the mouth, that it was as much as I could do to restrain myself from laughing. The two sons and their tall sister listened to this garrulity with their mouths open, and their eyes stupidly fixed upon their mother; and the more unintelligible was her declamation, the more they seemed to increase in admiring it.

At once to share and augment the pleasure of so charming a day, the lady had sent to invite a brother of hers, called Engelbrecht, who lived at the distance of a few leagues. Engelbrecht did not come that day; but the gaiety of the company was not disturbed by it. Pinar had sent a great quantity of brandy; the conversation

versation was interesting, but not so much so as to interfere with the bottle; and as, for want of goblets, they were obliged to make use of basins, in a little time the whole company, not excepting the mother and her two daughters, were completely drunk. For myself, who did not partake in their jollity, I seized the opportunity to withdraw, and spent the night in my camp.

Engelbrecht arrived the next day. He brought with him his family, which was more numerous than that of Van der Westhuyfen, and their arrival was commemorated with repeated bumpers of brandy. This solemnity over, some one proposed to visit me in my tent, and I soon saw the whole company approaching. It was reasonable to expect that such a visit would be accompanied with civility; but they were already heated with liquor. Engelbrecht was the first to address me; and this man, whom I had never seen, and who was bound on various accounts to treat me with attention, demanded, in a rude tone, why I had admitted into my troop such a rascal as Klaas Baster.

This impertinent question satisfied me, that the secret of the presence of Baster was known.



Now no one but Pinar could have given this information. Prior to our visit to the Van der Westhuysens, I had requested of him the most profound silence as to the arrival of the two brothers: he promised it: but what dependence was to be placed on the promises and discretion of a drunkard? Irritated at the impropriety of his conduct, I addressed myself to him, and I confess I treated him somewhat roughly. To the brother I replied in a dry manner: I declared positively, that if any one should think proper to put the slightest insult upon Klaas Baster, I should consider him as my enemy, and treat him as such. My manner was so firm and decisive that no one ventured to answer me a word. I was encouraged to this by the presence of the father. He did not indeed allow himself to speak, but I was sure he approved of what I said. I imagined I could see into his inmost thoughts; and while I warmly defended his sons, I could discover in his eyes the pleasure I gave him by taking the part of two unfortunate men, who were only unfortunate because they were his.

To change a conversation which they had expected would have taken a very different turn,

turn, the mother-in-law invited me to accompany them back to the house and dine with the two families. I accepted the invitation, without showing either resentment or displeasure, and followed the jovial group, puzzled to guess in what manner the feast would be conducted, and what part I should myself have to act in this solemn banquet.

The house consisted of a single room, about twenty feet long, by nine or ten wide. Its walls, constructed simply of earth, every where abounded with cracks and flaws. It resembled a barn, having for a window a single aperture only, stopped with the decayed head of an old cask. Through the numerous crevices of the damaged roof, you might easily see what sort of weather it was, without quitting your place; and, whenever it rained, these crevices, numerous as the holes in the spout of a watering-pot, were sure to drench both the room and its inhabitants. The fire was made in a corner by the side of the door; chimney indeed there was none; and the smoke had accordingly to choose whether it would make its exit through the roof, the window, the cracked walls, or the door. In the corner opposite to the door was  
heaped

heaped up, under a few half-rotten mats that scarcely covered it, the whole produce of the last harvest, intended for the consumption of this numerous family.

The furniture of this splendid apartment was perfectly analogous with the building itself. Under the window was fixed a rough-hewn table, upon which a kettle of boiling water and a few broken basins were constantly standing. Three small trunks served at once both for seats and closets, upon which planks were placed, when there was company, to answer the purpose of benches. In a third corner, by the side of the corn, was the sofa of the master and mistress of the house. This sofa, or bed if you will, consisted of four stakes driven into the ground, upon which was nailed a bullock's hide by way of mattress, and upon this mattress was a number of sheep-skins, greasy, stinking, and ill-dressed, which formed the beds and bedding of the rest of the family, who slept promiscuously one among another upon the floor. Lastly, against the wall opposite the window was a handmill for grinding corn. Such was the luxury in which revelled the inhabitants of this magic abode.

The



The party was scarcely assembled, when the two sons and two daughters of Van der Westhuyfen, assisted by a few Hottentots, prepared to grind the quantity of corn which so many strangers were likely to consume. The mill required four stout labourers, and the group joined occasionally in the exercise, relieving each other in turn. The fire in the mean time crackled on the hearth, in expectation of a whole sheep, just flayed, that hung against the wall, and was to constitute the sole dish in this elegant repast. The men drew their pipes from their pockets, and began their smoking. Pinar was of the party: no niggard of his brandy, when he was to partake of it himself, he had brought with him a plentiful supply, and the company were by no means dilatory in applying it to their lips.

As to myself, already more than satisfied with their entertainment, I felt my heart rise within me at the odious sight of this sheep hung against the wall, and the blood of which still by degrees fell upon the floor. In a short time the heat of the fire, the thickness of the smoke produced by so many pipes, the perspiration of the personages at the mill, the oily surface

surface of the Hottentots, and the poisonous fumes of brandy at second hand, got into my head and made me completely sick. Add to this the clatter of the mill, which was so loud that those who worked at it were obliged to cry with all their force for the purpose of making themselves heard. It was in vain that I endeavoured to resist this mass of sensations, and avoid quitting the company: I was at last obliged to yield. My head turned round, and I was more intoxicated than any of the other guests, though I had as yet drunk nothing but milk. I left the house, therefore, and returned to my tent, where the pure air and the calm around me soon restored me to myself. But what may quickly give an idea of this Hottentot debauch was, that no one was aware of my absence when they sat down to dinner.

The next morning they discovered my failure, and condoled with me for having slept over so agreeable a night. Their condolence, however, was mixed with ridicule and pity. They compared my conduct with that of Lieutenant Paterfon. Every one was eager in the praise of this traveller, who, while he had supplied claret for their entertainment, had shown himself

self an invincible competitor in the rivalship of smoking as well as of drinking; and I felt that the admiration his perseverance produced, turned but little to the advantage of my effeminacy.

Not but I was perfectly aware that Paterfon had conducted himself like a wise and considerate man. Obligated to live with drunkards, and to depend upon their kindness, he had the prudence to conform himself to circumstances and yield to their prejudices. I should myself have done the same, if my constitution would have admitted of it. But my impotence in this respect was not less than my aversion; and, capable of supporting every other kind of fatigue, I had no skill in the art of hard drinking, and least of all in the drinking spirits.

My intention in returning to Van der Westhuyfen's was to obtain from him and his brother-in-law, that they should each of them sell me a team. Piet Baster had left me, to return to his horde; and my own oxen, with the addition of those I had bought of his brother, were certainly not sufficient for the drawing of three waggons. Anxious about the condition in which I found myself, I was impatient



tient to escape from it: but the understanding of those with whom I had to deal had so far given way to the liberalities of Pinar, that neither that day nor the following was it possible for me to say a word on the subject; as the reader will easily suppose when I tell him, that, in three revolutions of the sun, eight men and six women had emptied a half-awm of brandy, in other words, a cask containing no less a quantity than twenty gallons. It is true that they passed the three nights without going to bed; that the days had been employed entirely in drinking, with the exception of that portion of sleep which circumstances had rendered unavoidable; that Pinar was skilful in the art of egging on others both by his precepts and example, and that in all probability his attendants were not less skilful in this respect than himself.

At length, on the fourth day, the company being tired of their revelry, and in some measure satiated with drinking, I made to Van der Westhuysen and Engelbrecht my proposal. Their answer was, that neither of them could spare me a single ox, as they had no more than were indispensibly necessary for their own use.

This

This was true. At the same time they informed me, that if I would repair to the mountains of Camis, I should there find planters who would furnish me with as many as I wanted. I had come to Namero, on the faith of Baster that there were teams in this settlement to be purchased: and from Namero I was now sent to Camis, where I might be equally unsuccessful. But what else could I do? To move from the place of my present encampment without fresh oxen, was totally impracticable; and I had no resource, therefore, but to run the risk of this wearisome journey.

The elder son of Van der Westhuyfen offered to accompany me on horseback and serve me as a guide. This proposal was certainly pleasing, and I accepted it with thanks; annexing at the same time one condition, which was, that Klaas Baster also should be of the party.

As it was known to his relations that Baster was with me, and as I had had occasion to express to them my sentiments upon the subject, I had made it a point that he should quit his lurking-place, and live with the rest of my companions openly in my tent. They appeared, after the conversation that had passed,

no

no farther to care about him : but this was not sufficient ; I was desirous of bringing about a complete reconciliation ; and nothing but the drunkenness of the family, from which indeed they were yet not recovered, had prevented me from executing my project. To leave him in my camp, while I went to Camis, would be exposing to danger a man to whom in reality I was under considerable obligations. Their animosity might happen to revive, and, availing themselves of my absence, they might play him some trick. In this uncertainty I was bound in honour to take him with me ; and this was my reason for proposing it, though I had no doubt of a refusal. At first my young man appeared to hesitate ; but perceiving my firm resolution, unless he complied with my terms, to reject his services, and ashamed at the same time either to retract his offer, or to object in my presence to the company of his brother, he presently acquiesced, and the next morning at day-break we set off, attended by some of my Hottentots.

The chain of Camis was to the east of us. Arrived at the foot of the first mountains, the roads were so narrow and winding, that our  
horses,



horses, except at intervals, were of no use to us, and we were obliged to clamber up in the best manner we could. This steep ascent conducted us, after a fatiguing march, to a valley of some depth, where was the stream of a river, which my guide assured me was the Green-River, and that it had its source in the mountains before us. Acquainted as he seemed to be with the country, the circumstance notwithstanding struck me as improbable; because, having coasted the banks of the Green-River for several hours together, I had found not a drop of water running in its bed, while that in question was flowing with a full stream. He was, however, right in his assertion. The river had sands and a parched soil to cross, which dried up its current, and prevented it from reaching the plain, unless when its waters were extraordinarily abundant.

The design of my guide in bringing me to this valley was to introduce me to a planter who had a settlement there, that is to say, a wretched hut that served him as a residence. I bought of him six oxen, which were to be delivered to me on my return. Farther on in the mountains, I found much such another habi-

VOL. II. H tation,

tation, the master of which sold me three more beasts upon similar terms, and offered me besides a lodging under his roof. Night approached, and the cold was already extreme. It was so intense that I could not sleep, but passed the night in shivering, wrapped up in my cloak, which served me at once for mattress and coverlid. When day-light came, I was not surpris'd at the severity of the weather, for the ground was covered with snow a foot deep.

Born in the torrid zone, where I had spent my early days, I was naturally sensible of cold; and though I had learnt to inure myself to it in France, the three years I had spent in Africa, a climate approaching that in which I drew my first breath, had revived my former sensibility. Under such circumstances, it was highly painful to me to be expos'd to the keen air of a frozen climate. Some reviewer, I forget who, speaking of my former journey, says that I travelled like a Persian satrap, because I had three waggons with me: assuredly, if this critic had beheld me in the hut of Camis, he would have confessed, that this satrap was not always in the lap of luxury.

The master of the cabin had informed me, that farther on, to the north-west, lived another settler, who, being richer in cattle than himself, could spare me a greater number. Notwithstanding my unwillingness to undertake a fresh journey in such severe weather, I set out. During the whole of the way, which was extremely bad, we were exposed to an unceasing snow, which fell in large flakes, as in the most northern parts of Europe. It was highly imprudent in us thus to venture under such circumstances; for the snow preventing us from seeing the ground on which we trod, we were continually in danger of breaking our necks, by falling down with our horses. Meanwhile, more fortunate than we had reason to expect, we arrived without accident at a miserable settlement, where we found, in a vile hut, an old man warming himself at a fire of cow-dung, by which he invited me to sit down.

Benumbed and frozen as I was, an opportunity of warming myself gave me no small pleasure, though I could effect it only in an inconvenient position, squatting on the ground like a Hottentot, the hut being too low to



permit me to stand upright. To this act of hospitality Cloete added that of offering us milk and bread, the only food at his disposal. I satisfied myself with the milk only, because a considerable portion of the dust of the millstone, with which the meal was ground, having entered into the composition of the bread, I did not choose to wear out my teeth with chewing it. In the evening our host feasted us with a *baamel* (a fat sheep) which he killed, and which was far more agreeable to my company than his milk.

For myself, mindful of the object of my journey, I conversed with my host, studied his character, and endeavoured to guess by what means I should best prevail on him to sell me the oxen I wanted. The many precautions I took promised at first to be all useless: scarcely had I made my request, when he stopped me short with a peremptory refusal: charming consolation to a man who had braved the frost and snow under a very different expectation! While I was feeling, however, the old man's pulse, I had observed his eyes sparkle when I mentioned the word brandy; and I flattered myself, that this auxiliary of eloquence would

would effect more with him than any rhetorical figures I could employ.

I had with me two bottles of genuine French brandy, one of which I ordered to be produced; and I filled a few bumpers to put him in good humour. When his features began to dilate, I renewed my proposal. It was not now refused as before; though it was still received with coolness. This commencement of assent I endeavoured to increase by a few additional bumpers; and in the intervals I represented to him, with all the energy of which I was master, the distressed situation in which I was placed, and the important service he would render me if he gave his assistance in extricating me from it. I even went so far as to offer him his own terms; which was in reality suffering him to put his hand into my pocket and take what he pleased: but to this I was driven by necessity; and he at length consented to sell me fourteen oxen for a hundred and forty rixdollars [about 25l.].

The cold had kept me awake the preceding night, and did not suffer me to sleep during the whole of this also, so that I was obliged

to pass it in conversation with Cloete, squatting with him at his fire.

The worst of the adventure was, that in the morning, when he had become sober, he did not remember the promises of the evening, and in consequence refused to keep them. Fortunately I had still some of his favourite liquor left; and I renewed therefore the experiment of the preceding day, which was once more equally successful. Cloete having again promised; to prevent his receding as before, I requested him to accompany me immediately to his pasture, that I might select the beasts he had sold me. When I examined their horns and teeth, they all appeared to have seen ten years service at least; yet I thought myself happy in obtaining even these.

On my return to his hut, I gave him a draft on Serrurier, the new fiscal, payable to one of his friends at the Cape. But these fourteen oxen made but one team, and I was desirous of having two. Accordingly, when I was writing the draft, I proposed to him to double the sum, on condition of his doubling the number of cattle; and, to strengthen my proposal,



propofal, I accompanied it with a large glafs of brandy. The liquor he fwallowed very deliberately, and then told me, without the leaft change of countenance, not only that he would not fell me another beaft, but that he muft frankly advife me to leave him thofe I had bought, as I had been taken in by him; for fix leagues farther on in the mountains was a Hottentot horde, where I could make a much better bargain, and thither he would recommend me to repair.

This ingenuous confeffion, rude as it was, could not avoid giving me pleafure, as it pointed out to me the means of completing my teams. Notwithstanding the fnow, which ftill continued to fall abundantly, I immediately gave orders for our departure, and asked Cloete for a direktion to the horde. But when we were on the point of fetting out, I felt myfelf fo benumbed, and fo completely penetrated with cold, that, ftrength and courage both failing me, I re-entered the hut, and contented myfelf with fending my people, giving them all the hardware we had brought with us, and ordering them to purchafe with it as many oxen as they could procure.

In these lofty mountains of Camis, the most elevated perhaps in all the south of Africa, the air is so sharp and cutting, as to affect the most robust constitution. Whether I was indisposed, or the cold had really augmented, which I doubt not was the case, I could no longer keep myself warm. My back was frozen, while the fire by which I was sitting scorched my shins. If, to remove the stiffness occasioned by my awkward attitude, I attempted to step out of the hut, the air caused such a tightness at my breast as to stop my respiration: I panted, and, feeling as if I should be suffocated, was obliged instantly to re-enter the cabin. There, it is true, I had another inconvenience to suffer, arising from the combined smoke of my host's pipe and the fuel. But of the two evils between which I had to choose, this was the more tolerable, and I therefore, till the return of my people, patiently submitted to it.

They brought with them seven oxen, and two cows; which, added to the seven I had saved of my own, the fourteen fold me by Klaas Baster, and those I had just bought, made up forty-four draught cattle. This number,

ber, though not completely adequate to my wants, was at least sufficient to enable me to continue my journey; and allowed me time to wait a more favourable opportunity, when I might make my final purchase to more advantage. Accordingly, without remaining a moment longer in this frozen climate, I took leave of my venerable host, and regained my camp, collecting as I went the cattle I had purchased at the two preceding plantations.

The cold had still increased, for in several places I found ice two inches thick. Besides, the snow ceased not to fall the whole time we were in the mountains; and, though I expected to suffer extremely on the road, yet the certainty of soon finding the air milder in the plain, and more especially the pleasure of being freed at last from the anxiety I had so long suffered, had such a powerful effect on my mind, that I was scarcely sensible to the inclemency of the season.

I did not see the sun again till my arrival in the valley watered by the Green-River. There, animated by the view of that beneficent orb, and warmed by its beams, I was proceeding gaily under its salutary influence, when  
we



we were suddenly stopped by cries, which seemed to issue from the summit of the mountain. Casting our eyes towards it, we perceived about a dozen zebras assembled at the foot of a rock, which sheltered them from the wind, while they warmed themselves in the sun.

The intermediate space between us was very steep; and we could not approach them without taking a wide circuit, which would have required a long and laborious walk, and wasted to no purpose a portion of time which I was not desirous of losing. To frighten them, however, and afford me the pleasure of seeing them run, I fired a fusée. The spot on which we stood was favourable for producing an echo; and in fact the explosion, after having reverberated around us, reached the rock, at the foot of which the zebras were collected, and was thence returned back again to our ears.

The zebras, deceived by the repercussion of the sound, and supposing it to come from the top of the mountain, descended from their rock on full gallop, and ran towards us, endeavouring to escape through the valley. But  
when

when they perceived us, they turned off, made a double, and, gaining the side of the mountain opposite to that which they had come down, quickly disappeared.

A female alone, either less frightened, or too much fatigued to ascend the height, quitted the herd, and continued her course through the valley. Hitherto I had kept in my dogs, though with difficulty; but when the animal was near enough to afford a chase, I slipped them, and they soon came up with her. Jager, particularly, was so near, that from time to time he fixed his teeth in her legs and thighs, and, as he was the stoutest and strongest of my pack, at every bite he brought away either flesh or skin. Young Van der Westhuyfen and I pursued the chase on horseback, followed by my Hottentots, who, though on foot, were little behind us. At length we surrounded the animal, and, throwing a rope with a slip-knot over her, terminated the chase; then fastening the rope to my horse's tail, I drew her after me.

At first she followed quietly; but, whether terrified at the sight of the dogs, or whether the pain of her wounds became too acute, we had

not advanced above a hundred paces before she gave the horse such jerks, as made him fling back his heels, at which she would rear on her hind legs. This refractoriness stopped my progress; and to put an end to it, I resolved to mount upon the back of the animal. My companion and my Hottentots attempted in vain to dissuade me, by predicting some misfortune: but the worst that could happen to me was the being thrown off, and I was not to be diverted from my purpose by the fear of a fall. I was also desirous of ascertaining whether it was possible to break in this wild creature, which the learned represent to us as untameable, and that from mere prejudice, for it is far from being so in reality, as the reader will presently see; and the savages, whose testimony on this point ought to have more weight than that of the naturalist, deem it very fit for the saddle.

To protect me from the teeth of the animal, I took care to muzzle her: she was then loosened from my horse, and I vaulted on her back. Her resistance was slight, and less than that of a colt the first time of being mounted. Soon she walked as quietly as my horse, and  
thus



thus I proceeded with her for more than a league, to the house of the planter of whom I had purchased my first oxen. This trial so far satisfied me, that I thought of keeping her for riding : but in that case it would have been necessary to cure her wounds, and they were too large for me or my people to venture on such an undertaking. Accordingly I gave up the design ; and thinking that, if left to herself and the instinct of nature, she would recover with much more speed and certainty, I resolved to give her her liberty. But the Hottentots of the planter at whose house we were begged the animal of us, that they might feast on her flesh, of which they were fond ; and, in consequence, she was killed and cut up immediately.

Among the various persons who will read this fact, some will no doubt be found ready to maintain that it proves nothing ; and that an animal fatigued by a long chase, weakened by wounds, and loaded with an unwonted burden, must naturally become manageable and more docile. This reasoning, I confess, would be applicable to a human being ; or even to domestic animals, which, born patient, or become

so by education, submit without resistance to the yoke imposed on them, and bear with considerable calmness even blows and wounds, as well as the application of remedies to cure them. But it is not the same with wild animals and beasts of prey. To these every kind of force is insufferable: pain irritates them; if acute, it renders them furious; and their madness rages to such a pitch, that, if unable in their captivity to wreak their vengeance on their enemy, they frequently destroy themselves.

It appears that, among the multitude of animals dispersed over the surface of the earth, there is a certain number destined by nature to the service of man: at least there are some which have apparently a more docile disposition, or are more easily tamed; and this circumstance distinguishes them from those which are dangerous or hurtful from their natural ferocity. The quality of which I am speaking truly indicates the superiority of man; and, without searching for its cause in miracles or mystic reveries, our experience on this head is sufficient to excite all our admiration.

In every country throughout the globe, man  
has

has contrived to subdue, tame, train to his service, accustom to his domestic way of living, and bend to his purpose, many different species of animals: but I am persuaded there are still many more which he might appropriate to his use; and in this number I reckon the zebra and the quagga, which would be elegant and valuable acquisitions to him, from their strength and swiftness as well as the beauty of their skins.

As the zebra on which I had made my experiment was a female, and it is to be presumed a male would naturally be less docile, I purposed to repeat it on a male, if I should be fortunate enough to procure one: but, during the whole course of my journey, I sought an opportunity in vain; for though nothing is more easy for a traveller in Africa than to hunt and kill zebras, it is very difficult to catch one alive; at least it is not to be done without excellent running horses, capable of supporting a long chase; and even then it is necessary to hunt these animals in the plain; for, if there are mountains near, the zebras would soon set the speed of the horses at defiance by their superior agility in ascending them. However, though



though I had no opportunity of repeating my trial, I am not the less convinced of the practicability of taming the zebra, and converting him into a domestic animal.

Such an undertaking, I allow, would require pains, address, patience, and an uninterrupted perseverance in rational means. At the same time, the most perfect mode of education would not succeed equally well with every species: some are naturally dull and stupid, and these unite with their want of understanding an obstinacy of resistance, and a refractory disposition, which would render them altogether unteachable. We may go farther perhaps and say, that the most perfectible species are those which, being inured to combats and stratagems from their mode of life, and continually in a state of defensive or offensive warfare, have more occasion to unfold their faculties, exercise their instinct, and employ reflection, if in speaking of beasts I may use this expression, which certainly is as proper when applied to them as to us. The lion, which is styled the king of beasts, no doubt because he is supposed to be the most dangerous and terrible, is one of the most easy to tame.

tame. Without quoting, in proof of this assertion, all the facts recited in history respecting the gratitude and attachment sometimes shewn by this formidable king, I shall content myself with citing the testimony of citizen Desfontaines, demonstrator of botany at the national botanic garden. When this naturalist resided on the coast of Barbary, he saw a thousand instances of children playing and toying in the streets with a lion, which quietly bore with all their tricks in the same manner as a young dog would have done.

The consequences resulting from these reflections will, no doubt, be treated as paradoxes by a certain class of philosophers, who choose rather to decide upon questions dogmatically, than take the trouble of examining them. With two or three leading principles of pretended philosophy, and a few sonorous and authoritative phrases, they presently do away the facts of experience and actual observation. They form systems in their closets, mould their prejudices into axioms, and utter them in circles of flatterers or humble admirers, who willing, or at least pretending, to believe what is told them with so magisterial an air, transmit

errors to others who are still more obsequious. Thus sentence is passed upon nature in a garget, because axioms admit of no reply, and because, with respect to observations, it is easier to believe than to examine.

For my part, I must repeat again and again, that I have seen with my own eyes; and the most eloquent periods, the most splendid discourses, will never persuade me out of their testimony.

Yes; I have beheld in the deserts of Africa numerous acquisitions that might be made, which would increase our enjoyments, and diminish our labours. Nay more, I am persuaded it would be easy for us to appropriate to our use the largest quadrupeds, as the buffalo \*, the kana, the pafan, the koedoe, the bubel, and the tzeiran. How greatly would the little antelopes thrive in our southern provinces! And there are even certain kinds of fowls with which we might stock our poultry yards. In Holland, to our shame be it spoken, in Hol-

\* With respect to this animal, the vast burdens drawn by it every day on the banks of the Tiber answer every objection; and the African buffalo is a species far superior in strength to that of Italy.



land, which is a far less favourable climate than ours; many species are common, which breed there as in their native country. Indifferent to every custom unfunctioned by whim or frivolity, the French are by no means inclined to borrow from this neighbouring nation a respectable institution; and would much rather ridicule its phlegm, its prudence, and its foresight, than profit by its example, to reap the fruits of these qualities. I have counted in the poultry-yards of the Dutch, with equal pleasure and astonishment, more than twenty kinds of wild geese and ducks which are unknown to us; and I have seen them breed like the other domestic fowls of our climes. Among others I have admired that beautiful species of Chinese teal\*, of which we have not even a stuffed specimen to shew in our cabinets of natural history. The Chinese, the Egyptian, and the Barbary goose, the various ducks of the Cape of Good Hope, the Carolina teal, and many others, as well as the curassoa of America, frequently adorn the tables of Holland; and not only do these animals

\* See Buffon's *Planches enluminées*, No. 805.

thrive in the frozen marshes of Holland, but even varieties are produced by crossing their breeds. But how should we think of foreign species, who neglect those of our own country? Luxury alone has sometimes prompted the rich with us, to make some slight attempts of this kind for the gratification of their pleasures. The pheasants of China, peacocks, and pintadas, which began to multiply in such a manner as to encourage our attempts, far from having promoted any ends of utility or abundance, were soon totally neglected, after they had a little while served the purposes of ornament and parade in the gardens of our men of fashion. I have often proposed similar attempts; and, to have executed them, I would have traversed Holland, and brought thence all the species naturalized to the climate; I would have sought every information necessary for bringing them up; and I would readily have undertaken the task of inspecting and managing these useful animals. But even for a post of this nature patronage was necessary, and the interest of some man in place, or some lady of influence, to whom perhaps it appeared very singular, that a man should be willing to sacrifice

sacrifice his time, and invent any novelty, for the good of his country. It is to be presumed, that public utility will be an object of more attention under a free government; that travellers will be rewarded; that a poor fellow, enamoured with science, will not be reduced to dissipate his little fortune, that a nest of stupid and devouring drones may have wherewith to administer to their sensual gratifications; and that places and rewards will not always fall to the lot of so many famous advisers, but of him who has really laboured, and made useful discoveries. This, however, is not all: I see many other wishes to form for the future good of the country.

Our path obliging us to pursue the course of the Green-River, the freshness of the pleasant vale through which it flowed, its various meanderings, and the different prospects arising at every step, filled my mind with the most pleasing thoughts: I trod on a verdant carpet embroidered with flowers; the surrounding hills, covered with shrubs and beautiful plants, displayed to my eyes a delightful shelter in every thicket: it was a garden in the bosom of a desert.



Among these numerous families of flowers and plants, whose virgin charms had never been unveiled to human eye, I observed several truly magnificent, and particularly remarked one, which I could not easily overlook; it was that unlucky geranium, with the points of which I had been so painfully acquainted, and the marks of which I still carried about me. I saw several of these, some with yellow flowers, others with white. Little practised in the study of botany, and always more prone to admire flowers than to destroy them, I at first took these for different species; but I soon changed my opinion, when I perceived that the same stalk frequently bore both white and yellow flowers: and upon leaving this enchanting spot I expressed my rapture in something like the following idyllium:

Adieu! vales, hills, geraniums, and flowers  
of every kind; verdant carpet, enchanting  
banks; sweet reveries, adieu! I am going to  
revisit the realms of frost, &c. &c.

To regain the Namero, it was necessary for us to traverse another chain of mountains covered with snow; so that, in less than eight hours journeying, we had experienced three

successive

ſucceſſive ſeaſons, two winters divided by a ſummer. But this ſudden change of temperature gave us all a cold and hoarſeneſs, which were not removed till ſeveral days after our return to Van der Weſthuyſen's.

The firſt object that met my eyes when I alighted was that abominable Pinar, whom ill fortune had thrown in my way to plague me. I would have given any thing in the world to have been rid of him ; but the tormentor came immediately to tell me, that he had waited on purpoſe to have the pleaſure of ſeeing me again.

My intention was to give my Hottentots and the oxen I had purchaſed a day's reſt, and to depart on the following morning. But Van der Weſthuyſen's family obſerved to me, that as I had new cattle, with the manners of which I was yet unacquainted, I ſhould run ſome riſk in employing them without previous trial ; and offered, if I would remain with them three days longer, to lend me theirs to transport my waggons as far as the river Kauffi. This offer I accepted, though I had no doubt that I ſhould be frequently out of humour with Pinar, and heartily tired of the drinkers.

A singular circumstance, however, which it was impossible to foresee, gave to things a very different turn. During my absence, Engelbrecht had several times visited my camp to converse with my Hottentots. One day, while talking of me, they mentioned that diversion in my first journey, which, in my account of it, I called the festival, and when, to divert them from too powerful a dose of tobacco, which I had been so imprudent as to give them, I took it into my head to make them dance to the music of the jew's harp. This burlesque festival was not yet forgotten by them. They never recollected without enthusiastic transport the instrument that afforded them so much pleasure; and, in consequence of their eulogiums, Engelbrecht, persuaded that a man who played on the jew's harp must be an accomplished musician, and that an accomplished musician must be capable of playing on any instrument, thought of prevailing on me to entertain the society assembled in the plantation.

He had at his house a sort of violin, which, hanging up against the wall near the fireplace, had there dried in silence, without having once been moved from its peg for these



ten years. To procure the company an agreeable surprize, he sent for it privately ; and, when I arrived, he put it into my hands, requesting me to employ my talents for their amusement. The reader will form a just idea of the instrument when told, that the strings were made by Engelbrecht himself. I took it, however, and scraped a few country dances, which instantly, as if by magic, set the whole company in motion. This music tortured my ear, and set my teeth on edge ; but to every one else it was delightful, and they ceased not their dancing, till fatigue left them no strength to continue it. The next day, the whole group, men and women, came in a body to beg me again to enable them to renew their pleasure ; and the day following the same solicitations were repeated. Thus almost the whole of my three days were spent in scraping catgut, while the noisy crew skipped joyously around me.

In the midst of these orgies, which I can compare to nothing better than the nocturnal revels of witches, one thing astonished me : the dancing so completely occupied every moment, that the favourite liquor was forgotten. But since the arrival of Pinar, his liberality had

enabled them to drink so much, that they were nauseated with it. Desirous of testifying my gratitude to a family, which had rendered me already some service, and was about to render me still more, I thought to eclipse Pinar, and with this view I sent to my waggon for a case of bottles. This case was filled with the best cordials from Martinico, manufactured by the celebrated Dame Anfoux. It was my gala store, reserved for particular occasions, and I fancied that, by presenting it to men but a single remove from savages, I should obtain their warmest thanks: but I was mistaken; the liquors were too sweet, and they absolutely disliked them. The women, after having tasted them all pretty largely, one after the other, preferred them indeed to the bad brandy of the Cape; but they unanimously agreed with the men, that the cordials of Dame Anfoux, however famous elsewhere, were of little worth in the African colony.

Their strong throats, accustomed for some days to a pungent burning spirit, were become insensible to so sweet and luscious a beverage: the drinkers complained of being sick, and cursed without ceremony the case and its contents,

contents. Having thus, while intending to regale the company in a distinguished manner, occasioned nothing but dissatisfaction, I was vexed to find the last day of my visit terminate so unfortunately, and to lose in a moment all the fruits of my three days musical performances; and I resolved if possible to remedy the evil. I had luckily among my stores some lemons from Piquet-berg, and some excellent French brandy. With these I bethought myself of making some tolerably strong punch; I did so, and they reckoned it divine. Cheerfulness resumed its seat, the sickness vanished, and the day finished as it began, with universal gaiety. Paterfon and his claret will long be remembered at mount Namero; and I believe my music, my dance, and my punch *à la diable*, will not soon be forgotten.

The reconciliation of Klaas Baster with his family was all that was wanting to enable me to depart with satisfaction, and congratulate myself on my abode in the mountains. I had often ventured to speak of him to some of the family, and they appeared to be not unfavourably disposed. A continuance of pleasure seemed to have extinguished their animosity. Even  
his



his brother had lived on good terms with him during the whole of our journey to Camis. From these auspicious symptoms, and the affectionate gaiety with which the punch had inspired them, my hopes were sanguine. Accordingly I proposed a treaty of peace, or rather a reconciliation, between the parties, which was acceded to unanimously without a single dissentient voice.

Immediately I ran to my camp, to announce the tidings to Klaas Baster; and, returning with him to the house, I presented him to his relations, who not only received him without the least appearance of ill-will, but all in turn gave him their hands; which, as I have elsewhere observed, is the most unequivocal testimony of friendship among the planters. Though the father had hitherto not dared to express his sentiments towards his son for fear of his wife, he was no sooner at liberty to avow them, than he gave free scope to his feelings, he poured out a bumper for him, and was the first to pledge him. Baster, quite beside himself, wanted words to thank his relations, and express his gratitude to me. I participated in his joy; I was happy in seeing him

him happy; and I congratulated myself for having at length been able, in some measure, to requite a man, to whom my people and I were indebted for our lives.

The next day, agreeable to his promise, Van der Westhuyfen lent me the teams that were necessary for my waggon. In the morning we set off. He and his family mounted another waggon, and accompanied us; for we had all engaged to pass the night at Engelbrecht's. His eldest son, as a mark of respect, would drive my waggon himself. Such is the custom among the planters: it is their mode of honouring a person, and is one of the greatest testimonies of regard they can pay: for the same reason it was impossible for me to refuse this honour without affronting him. But he had scarcely seated himself before he put the oxen on a gallop, and drove at full speed. This is another of the general prejudices of the country. On such occasions, the guide thinks it incumbent on him to display his talents by driving as furiously as possible: he would sooner kill his beasts than not thus manifest his prowess. In vain did I entreat him to moderate his pace. The roads  
were

were execrable, and the jolts made me every moment apprehensive that the waggon would be overturned and dashed to pieces; but he would have thought it derogatory from his honour if he had gone a foot pace, and his politeness cost me two jars of lime-juice, which were broken in the passage, and the loss of which I extremely regretted.

Irreparable as this accident was in my situation, I consoled myself with the reflection, that much worse might have happened. But I was grieved to the heart, when, shortly after my having alighted at Engelbrecht's, I saw Pinar arrive. The sight of this man was become a torment to me, and it seemed as if he had sworn never to quit me more.

The situation of Engelbrecht's plantation was infinitely more pleasant than that of his brother-in-law: yet his house, or to speak more properly his shed, was, if possible, still less habitable, and announced the indifference in this respect of the master and his family, which was very numerous. On my entering the apartment, which was the sole retreat of all the inhabitants of the plantation, I was surrounded by a crowd of children of all ages, whom I

at



at first took for Basters\*, or Hottentot mulattos and mestees, and true Hottentots. The father and mother perceived my mistake, and, ashamed of having children so much neglected about them, were eager to point out to me theirs. It was necessary to have the eye of a parent to distinguish them; for some were quite naked, and others, covered with tattered sheep-skins, begrimed with filth. The eldest daughter, who had dressed herself with care, came to accost me in her most splendid attire, having equipped herself in the most whimsical head-dress I ever beheld: it was a sort of cap composed entirely of black ostrich feathers, and which, overshadowing the forehead, gave her the appearance of a great doll. I paid her some compliments on her taste, at which she affected to be out of countenance; but her blushes soon vanished, and she concluded this first intercourse with offering me a large bundle of superb white plumes, for which I gave her, without ceremony, three rix-dol-

\* From the use of the word *Baster* in this and other places, it would appear as if it was a general appellation answering to *persons of colour*: but the author has no where explained it. T.

lars. Nay more, a little sort of convention was established between us, according to which she was to supply me largely with commodities of this kind; and I in return to make her a present of a few more pieces of coin, similar to those I had already given her.

I must confess, however, that during my four days stay at this plantation, I received many real proofs of friendship, and experienced some degree of pleasure. We drank punch, we had music, and the greater part of every night was spent in dancing. In the day I hunted. In traversing the adjacent mountains I observed many beautiful plants, with the drawings of which my portfolio is enriched. Zebras, pasans, and koedoes, are pretty common throughout this country; but they are rendered so wild by continual hunting, that it is difficult to come within shot of them. Elephants also frequently make their appearance in these parts, but scarcely ever stay, preferring the neighbourhood of the sea, where the sand-hills afford them shelter.

Notwithstanding the prodigious number of cattle which Engelbrecht possessed, he would by no means part with a beautiful team of  
twelve

twelve black oxen, which he showed me with a sort of boasting and ostentation. Indeed I never saw a team so well matched; and, though I offered him the sum of two hundred rix-dollars (about 45*l.*), an exorbitant price in that country, I could not obtain it: however, he sold me several sheep, and a heifer, which I caused to be killed and salted for my people; and I increased also my store of tobacco with all he could spare me.

Engelbrecht was soon to make a journey to the Cape, and I availed myself of the opportunity to write to my friends, which would probably be the last that would offer, as I should find no other plantation on the road. When I departed, my host yoked to my waggon the beautiful team of which I have just spoken, and not only offered to conduct me with them to the Great River, but also supplied my other carriage with stout cattle, by way of sparing mine. When I set out, Pinar followed me still. In vain did I halt after travelling four hours, in order to get rid of him, near a spring we found on the way: in vain did I pitch my tents, in the hope that he would think his day's journey too short, and proceed forwards, leaving me behind: he too halted at the spring,



and I saw that without an absolute quarrel I should never be relieved from this disagreeable companion.

This spot afforded an immense number of grouse, which came by thousands to drink at the spring, without being alarmed at seeing us, and afforded us a copious supply to our larder. From my tent I fired upon their flocks with my great musket, and brought down at least a score at every shot: but this sport led me to an observation which I think important.

Birds, as well as other living beings, are not all possessed of an equal degree of physical sensibility. Some sink under the least pain, while others bear with fortitude the most acute sufferings. All sportsmen know, for instance, that the slightest wound is sufficient to bring down a woodcock, and that it is often killed by the fall, rather than by the shot it has received. I have taken up several quite dead, though they had received but a slight wound from a small-shot. The grouse of the Cape, on the contrary, appear to have organs little sensible to pain, or a sort of courage which enables them to support it till the moment of death. Though I fired into the middle of the flock, and of course every shot took place, it was very  
rare

rare that any remained, but such as had a wing broken, or were shot through the head. Those that were wounded flew away with the rest; but on looking after them, you would see them from time to time dropping without any sign of life, and you might even trace them after they were out of sight by the dead that lay in their track.

What I have here said of birds is equally applicable to quadrupeds. Frequently there exists a great difference of sensibility even between animals that have an affinity to each other: for a slight wound in the body will destroy a panther or a leopard, while the cat, which is much smaller, will live with broken ribs and a fractured skull, and speedily recover. It is the business of the anatomist and the natural philosopher to inform us what is the true cause of this astonishing difference: I shall only observe, that there are individuals, the bodies of which exhibit at one and the same time parts extraordinary sensible, with others which are not at all so. To mention but a single example: the porcupine of the Cape has the bones of its head so fragile, that with a single stroke of a switch you can easily fracture

its skull, and thereby kill it; whereas you might beat its body with a club, with all your strength, without depriving it of life. This sort of insensibility, let me add, is by no means owing to the hardness of its skin, which on the contrary is very tender; for, if you take hold of some of its quills, or even its hairs, and pull them ever so gently, you will tear away with them all the skin in which they grow.

In remembrance of the birds which I had killed, I called this spring Grouse Fountain: in the country it is named *Matjes-Fontyn* (Mat Fountain): and so vexed was I with Pinar, that in my anger I was on the point of styling it Fountain of Torment. This man, as determined to follow me as if he had resolved to be my plague, accompanied me the following day. On the road I resolved in my mind various methods of getting rid of him; but I knew his obstinacy so well, that I despaired of success. When I arrived at the Kauffi, however, I fancied I had found an opportunity of accomplishing it.

This rivulet was dry, like most of those we had lately crossed. But as its bed was scooped  
out



out of rocks, I doubted not but there were several cavities in it containing water. The probability of my conjecture, added to the romantic situation of the place, made me resolve to encamp here. I even informed Pinar, that I intended to remain a whole week; and, that he might entertain no doubt of it, I dismissed Engelbrecht's teams. This determined him: he continued his way, and thus I was rid of his company.

What I had conjectured as to the river was quickly verified: on sending a few of my people to search, they soon returned to inform me, that they had found water in twenty places. I was encamped very near some vast mountains of granite, through which the Kauffi had opened itself a passage. In hollowing out its bed, the torrent had given the rocks a thousand whimsical forms, which gratified the eye, and must form natural cascades of extraordinary beauty when abounding with water. The place where my camp was situated was in general parched: there was little pasturage to be seen, and that little only here and there in patches, while it was covered with thick and lofty mimosas, the shade of which

was the more grateful to us, because they were the first large trees we had seen since we left the Elephants-River.

A botanist would have found here an ample harvest of various plants, particularly of the oily kinds, with which the country abounds. I made drawings of several that appeared to me the most remarkable; among others, of a magnificent ixia, very lofty, the numerous deep red flowers of which were extremely pleasing to the eye. I also noticed some large and high bushes of the great euphorbia, with which the whole plain was interspersed. The savages employ the milky juice of this plant to poison the arrows they make use of in hunting the larger kinds of game. I was desirous of trying the poisonous quality of this plant, and, notwithstanding the strenuous dissuasion of my Hottentots, I put a small drop of its milky juice upon my tongue, which occasioned an insufferable smart for more than two hours. I cut a slice of the plant, and offered it to my ape, who leaped back affrighted, and ran to a considerable distance, without venturing to come near me again for a long time.

Klaas Baster talked as if he was well acquainted

quainted with this euphorbia. According to him, its juice is most virulent when the plant is in flower, which was the case at present, and then it is that the savages lay up their store of it. To collect it they make little incisions in the plant, from which it flows out into particular vessels made for the purpose of receiving it. At first its colour is white and milky, but it soon becomes brown, and thickens into the consistence of an electuary, the deleterious powers of which, in proportion as it inspissates, are concentrated and increased.

With this mortal juice the hunters impregnate their arrows. Experience having taught them that a common arrow is seldom sufficient to kill any of the larger sorts of game, they have invented this mode of stopping it quickly in its flight, by congealing its blood through the speedy and infallible means of a subtile poison. To effect the death of the animal, it is necessary that the venom reach the blood, and mingle with it: yet, inconceivable as it may be, the animal, though poisoned, is not the less wholesome food, as I have observed elsewhere.

The arrow is headed with a piece of bone



well sharpened. If iron were used, the activity of the poison would corrode the metal, and convert it into rust, which would cause it to separate and fall off. Sometimes, indeed, they add to the bone a point of iron, but then they take care so to apply the inspissated juice, that the metal is not touched by it.

In places where there are small reservoirs of water frequented by game, the savages employ the euphorbia, for procuring this game, in a different manner. They cut it in slices, throw these slices into the basin, and stir the water occasionally to accelerate the solution of the juice. When they think the water sufficiently impregnated with the poison, they take out the slices of euphorbia, as no animal would venture to drink at the reservoir if he perceived them. This method, which is much more certain than the former, would be extremely destructive, if the game were not protected by a kind of instinct. It is said, that there are some species with senses so exquisite, that they easily distinguish poisoned water, and can never be deceived by it, while they have the light of day to assist them. Accordingly, as long as the sun is above the horizon, the savages

vages remain near the reservoir to keep them away, and leave it free for their approach, only when the darkness does not permit the eye to discern any thing in it.

Animal instinct is an occult quality not easy to be defined. Unquestionably it results from the combination of the elements of which every living being is composed, which have a tendency to repel whatever is of a nature different from their own: but this is rather giving an account of the effect than explaining the cause. Man too has an instinct, which draws him towards that which is good, and repels him from that which is noxious. But man in society quickly loses it; and frequently does not allow it time to unfold itself. Savages, on the contrary, and all animals that enjoy their liberty, continually exercise and improve it. I have often found basins of water poisoned with euphorbia; and when the surface was smooth, I could perceive on it a thin shining coat of a greenish brown oil, which was the poison. Now if my feeble eye were able to discern this slight mark, how obvious must it be to animals, the sight of almost all of which is so perfect? I shall soon

have occasion to return to this subject, and I shall relate circumstances which will prove, that Klaas Baster, in speaking of the effects of euphorbia, did not deceive me.

Though this mode of procuring game appears as if it must be very productive, it is much less advantageous than might be supposed; for if the animals that come to drink are not warned by the sight, they soon are by the taste, and quit the water. I once poisoned a small pond, to which there came in the course of the day more than four thousand antelopes, of the spring-buck species; yet I caught only three, beside a hyena which I found there the next morning, and which had died in the night. When a flock of antelopes arrives at the basin, the first, or the most thirsty, attempt to drink; but scarcely have they touched the water when they retire affrighted, and the flock instantly follow their example, without approaching the fatal snare.

In traversing the dry bed of the Kauffi, I found several sorts of aquatic birds, particularly those wild ducks which the planters call the *berg-eend* (the mountain-duck.) They swam and sported in the little basins among the  
rocks,



rocks, where perhaps they had never before been disturbed by any human being. Opposite one of these reservoirs I found a cavern, in which I spent many hours watching for such of these birds as I wished to procure.

One day while I was in my hiding-place, I saw an elk-antelope, the *kana* of the Hottentots, arrive at the basin. The sight of him afforded me the more pleasure, as he certainly was not alone in this canton; and having been obliged for some time past to feed my people at the expence of my flock, I was very desirous of supplying my kitchen by the help of my gun. This antelope would have saved me a few sheep; but at the time I had only small-shot in my fufee, and I was afraid to put in a ball, lest the noise and motion should frighten him away. However, as he was not more than ten yards off, and I had two charges to fire, I ventured to let off both barrels at once, and in fact he fell into the water, where he was drowned.

Delighted with this piece of good fortune, upon which I had not much reckoned, I ran to my camp for assistance to carry home my prize; and at the same time I brought with  
me

me a few hunters and my dogs, in order to beat the adjacent parts, in the hope of finding more of these animals: but the search was fruitless, and we were obliged to content ourselves with the one I had shot.

One day, however, as I was proceeding down the bed of the river, and beating about in the same manner, with my hunters and dogs, my dogs suddenly opened, and we presently perceived before us a panther, stretched on an antelope which it was devouring. He appeared by no means intimidated at our approach, but glared furiously at us with his eyes, without quitting his prey. There were seven of us in company, all provided with fuses, so that we ran no great risk in attacking him. When we had advanced within fifty paces of him, he arose, turned his head towards us, and seemed to select the victim on which it was his intention to spring. My gun was loaded with ball; I fired, and wounded him; and as he fled he received a few more slight wounds from my Hottentots. He took refuge in a hollow rock on the border of the river, a hundred paces farther on, whither my dogs followed him, and kept him at bay: but, though  
he

he had lost much blood, and was necessarily weakened, they durst not attack him. We ascended the rocks on the opposite bank, and from this another ball was fired by one of my people, which killed him. My dogs then rushed upon him; and before I could come to his rescue, they had so torn and mangled him, that his skin was good for nothing, and I resolved therefore to leave him.

My Hottentots, however, were not so ready to abandon their prize. They purposed to have a feast upon the animal, and with this view bore him to my tent. In my first journey I had the curiosity to taste a tiger, merely to know the flavour of the flesh of such a terrible carnivorous animal. From that trial they doubted not but I thought the tiger as excellent food as they did, and accordingly they offered to save for my eating certain choice parts of our panther. I answered with a smile, that I could by no means think of feeding on an animal which had perhaps devoured the flesh of some Hottentot. This argument had little effect on my savages; who, to convince me of my mistake, opened the panther, and showed  
me



me that there was nothing in his stomach but a little clay, which he had swallowed to appease the rage of hunger, and some pieces of the antelope. Be this as it would, I gave up the whole of him to my people, reserving for myself only a couple of quarts of grease, which they took from him, and which is esteemed by the planters an excellent resolvent for tumours and ulcers.

In returning to my camp I found a beautiful species of euphorbia, which I thought new, and of which I made a drawing, that is copied in the annexed plate. This euphorbium adheres to the earth no otherwise than by a few slender roots. It rises to the height of nine or ten inches only; and exactly resembles a cucumber, of which it has the bent shape. It contains abundance of milky juice, which appeared to me as caustic as that of the great euphorbia. Its colour, which is a yellowish green, tinted with a beautiful shade of violet towards the root, gives it a very attractive appearance: but woe betide the man who should be tempted to eat of it! as I am told it is a virulent poison. Several of my Hottentots, and my



CUCUMBER ~ EUPHORBIA.





my old Swanepoel, who were perfectly acquainted with this plant, informed me that it is called by the planters *noordfche-kull*.

While in my walks I became acquainted with the environs of my camp, I also endeavoured to distinguish the plants and flowers which grew there in abundance. No where, during the whole course of my life, have I seen any so superb, from variety and brilliancy of colour, or so curious for singularity of form. At every step new ones presented themselves to my view; and I involuntarily stopped to admire their beauties. How many did I see, which, were they transplanted into the richest gardens of Europe, would constitute their chief ornament! And how often did I regret, that I was not a skilful botanist! Who knows, said I to myself, whether among this number art might not find some that would impart to our manufactures those beautiful and unfading dyes, which we have hitherto deemed the exclusive property of India? Who knows whether it might not discover new remedies for some of those diseases, which are deemed incurable, because our pharmacy supply no means for their relief?

Mor-

Mortified at my own ignorance, which allowed me nothing more than a vague admiration tending to no end, I was obliged to content myself, as I have already said, with drawing such flowers as appeared to me the most scarce and beautiful. Of such as were ripe I collected the seeds: and I attempted to dry several plants and preserve them in paper, after the manner of botanists. The last process was the least employed by me. Beside that it is impracticable with the oily plants, I was soon weary of the many tedious, minute, and useless cares it required. I say useless; for can it be called preserving a plant, to spoil its shape in every part by crushing it flat between two leaves of paper? Is it possessing a flower, to gather it of a purple hue in Africa, and bring it to Europe of the colour of snuff or the peel of a dried onion? In fine, can we know their nature by studying it on dead and discoloured leaves?

Since fashion has so greatly multiplied those artificial flowers with which the dress of women is adorned, the makers of them have begun to employ their skill in the services of botany, and astonishing performances in this way may

be seen at citizen Venzel's, the most celebrated artist of the kind in Paris. It was in a house in the metropolis of France that I saw, for the first time, some of these artificial plants, the flowers, fruits, stalks, leaves, and even roots of which were executed with astonishing fidelity, and of their natural size. To deceive the eye more effectually, most of these plants were placed in pots filled with sand or dry mould. Never was nature more perfectly imitated by art; here we have neither the glaring falsehood of the graver, nor the dead appearance of the hortus ficcus: all is life; the plant seems to vegetate; and at one glance you take in the whole, and the various parts of which it is composed. In this state, I have seen at Paris African plants which I could not recognise in herbals, but which I instantly knew in this collection. The botanist indeed must decide how far this method may contribute to the advancement of his extensive science. No doubt it would be impossible for him to preserve every known plant in this manner in his cabinet, however spacious it might be: but could he not at least find room for the different genera,



with a selection of the most curious and instructive species?

The eleventh of September I resumed my journey, hoping that Pinar would have advanced so far before me, that I should not experience the misfortune of falling in with him again. Already the heat began to be sensible; the sky was covered with clouds; we frequently heard loud claps of thunder; in short, every thing announced the approach of heavy storms, yet not a single drop of water fell. This extreme drought rendered me very uneasy: I was apprehensive that I should every where find the rivers dried up, and had no hope but from the natural basins and reservoirs to which chance might guide my steps.

After two hours journeying we came to one formed by a vast flat rock. My dogs had scented it, but it was poisoned with euphorbia, and I even found at a little distance the slices of the plant that had been used, and which were now grown dry. On my arrival at it I found my pack bathing themselves; and two of the dogs had also drank of the water, and were lying on the brink of the reservoir in  
dread-

dreadful convulsions. I made those that were bathing quit the water, of which they had certainly not swallowed any, since they were not at all disordered; and I forced down the throats of the other two several doses of spermaceti oil, which made them vomit, and saved their lives. They felt the effects of the poison, however, for more than a fortnight: their legs were so stiff, that they could not bend a single joint: during the whole of this time we were obliged to leave them in the waggons, and they would take no food except milk. It was fortunate for us, that their eagerness to drink had warned us of the danger. But for this, perhaps, my Hottentots would have watered the cattle at the reservoir without suspicion, and possibly even some of themselves would have been poisoned in quenching their thirst.

However great may be the proportion of euphorbia thrown into a pond of water, I am persuaded that it never diffuses itself through the whole mass. It is my opinion, that the poison is a resinous juice, which, being from its nature incapable of combining with water, swims on the surface, and there forms that shining greenish oil, which with a little at-

tention may be discerned by the naked eye, when the surface is smooth. I tried the qualities of this oil on myself, taking with a straw, from the surface of the basin, a single drop, which I put upon my tongue; and it gave me that kind of burning pain which a caustic occasions. I then took up some water from the reservoir in the hollow of my hand, and blowing off the oily fluid which swam on the surface, I dipped the end of my tongue into the remainder, but could not perceive in it the slightest taste different from that of water itself.

Bold, however, as my experiment was, I dared not carry my temerity so far as to swallow any of this water: but I offered it to Kees, the acuteness of whose smell could have informed me with certainty if there were any danger. He snuffed at it, and immediately left it. This trial not completely satisfying me, and desirous, if possible, to deceive the exquisite smell of my ape, I squeezed some juice of euphorbia into some milk, and gave it him to drink. He would have been caught this time; for he not only tasted the milk without expressing the least disgust, but was proceeding

ing



ing to swallow the whole, if I had not prevented him.

He was, however, not in the least injured by this experiment: but it must be confessed the dose was trifling, for I was unwilling to risk the life of an animal so useful to me. Perhaps, too, milk is an antidote to euphorbia, and Kees swallowed the remedy with the poison. If this fact was established, it would be an important discovery. I would gladly have confirmed it, by giving an animal a sufficient quantity first of the juice of euphorbia, and afterwards of milk: but in those deserts, and purposing to take so long a journey, I had not a single beast with me that I could spare. I was obliged, therefore, to defer my trial to a future period; and with this view I filled a bottle with euphorbia juice, to preserve it for a more favourable opportunity.

The general opinion of the planters as to this juice is, that it occasions death by coagulating the blood, and that consequently it is a poison of the stupefactive and narcotic kind. This I greatly doubt, from the violent convulsions which my dogs began to experience after having drank of the water of the basin.

Besides, for the planters to be right in their conjecture, this vegetable must change its nature with the soil and climate; since, being in that case a narcotic in Africa, it is considered at the same time as a hydragogue in Europe.

I had too much reason to dread the neighbourhood of a poisoned water to remain long at this place. Notwithstanding the extraordinary vigilance I required of my people, some of my beasts might go to it to drink. I deemed it prudent, therefore, to depart as speedily as possible, and I continued my journey.

We were in the country of the less Nimi-quas. Two leagues beyond the reservoir we perceived a few of those people keeping their herds; but, alarmed at the sight of my caravan, they betook themselves to flight. I spurred my horse on towards them, to remove their fears, and get from them some information; for, having an unknown country to traverse, I could obtain assistance and information only from the hordes by which it was inhabited. They told me, that a league farther on was a horde of their nation, among which dwelt a white woman, whose cattle they were keeping.

We

We repaired to the place mentioned, and found, in fact, a kraal composed of about twenty huts. The white woman was standing before the door of hers. She had a garment on of tanned hides like the Nimiquas, but she did not wear like them either the kross or the small apron. Pinar, as he passed by, had informed her of my journey, and I was accordingly received as a person whose arrival was expected. Having entered her hut, which was neither larger nor more ornamented than the rest, she informed me, that her husband had lived with this horde, of which he became the chief, and that she, at his death having inherited his authority, continued to live with it still. Indeed, from the tone in which she issued her commands, I soon found that she was mistress there. Her children also were clothed like herself in nothing but skins; and but for their long hair, so embrowned were their complexions by the sun, that I should have taken them for natives of the country; and the deception would have been the more easy, from their speaking no language but the Nimiqua.

Of my whole caravan, Klaas Baster was the



only person who understood this tongue, which was that of his infancy. Though different from the Hottentot language, which I already knew, it had the same three clappings, and appeared to me to be constructed on the same general principles: only I remarked, that the Nimiquas more frequently employed those hoarse sounds, which, issuing hastily from the throat, divide their words, and render them for a time unintelligible to the ears of a stranger.

The children had been told, that among the packages with which my waggons were laden, I had divers assortments of small glassware, and they were desirous of obtaining some for the purpose of ornamenting their dress after the Hottentot fashion. They could express their wishes only by means of Klaas Baster, and they requested him to intercede with me in their behalf. I was very ready to comply with their desires, and even accompanied my present with a few Nimiqua words, which Baster taught me, and which I ventured to pronounce.

Whenever I attempted to speak to the Nimiquas in their own language, they heard me  
out

out with patient attention, exerted themselves to understand me, and when they had guessed my meaning, not only seemed to feel pleasure from the circumstance, but, taking up my thoughts, were at the pains to instruct me what I ought to have said. From this benevolence of disposition, and readiness to oblige, I could not but be surpris'd to find opposite inclinations in the children of the chief. But they were really children; and thence I concluded, that their laugh resulted from that little maliciousness which is common to their age; and this I am still inclined to believe, for I have never seen a Nimiqua laugh, in similar circumstances, at my awkward manner of expressing myself.

I shall not stop here to relate the manners and customs of this horde of less Nimiquas, as they differed very little from those of the neighbouring hordes, of which I shall soon have occasion to speak. In their dress they much resembled the Hottentots on the eastern coast, the variations being too slight to merit notice. An intelligent traveller, who has many similar people to describe, must exhibit them as a whole, if he would render his work interesting

teresting to the reader, and particularise only such as are distinguished by greater powers of invention, or progress in arts, and thence possess a certain degree of superiority. I shall only observe, that the less Nimiquas in general are more stoutly made, and not so thinvisaged as the Hottentots in the neighbourhood of the Cape.

The widow had sent to my camp a portion of the milk of her herds, and in imitation of her example all the women of the horde brought some of theirs also. This voluntary tribute was continued during my stay at the kraal. It recalled to my remembrance those pleasing days of my first journey, when the young Narina brought me every morning milk drawn from her goats with her own hands. But how great was the difference! Instead of those pretty clean baskets in which the charming Gonaqua offered me her present, I here saw nothing but wooden bowls, clumsily made, and with a rancid and buttery coat round the edge, at once disgusting to the eye and the nose. My Hottentots, little nice in matters of cleanliness, were very well satisfied with the present of the Nimiquas; but I, conceiving an invincible



cible distaste for it, contented myself with the milk of my own dairy, and gave to my dogs what my people left unconsumed of theirs.

The evening of my arrival there was a ball : for it must be observed, that among the pleasures which the hospitality of savages endeavours to procure for strangers, dancing holds the foremost rank. This noisy festivity, had it been the first time of my witnessing it, might have afforded me amusement : but I had so often heard their *ba ba, bo bo*, that the interest was vanished. My attention was excited, however, by one of the musicians, who played on the flute in a manner I did not comprehend, and which awakened my curiosity. Having put the instrument to his mouth, he drew from it very loud tones : then, suddenly breaking off, he repeated the last notes of his music so as to produce an exact imitation of an echo. This variation on a stringed instrument would not have surprised me, but on a wind instrument it was by no means so easy. I was desirous of knowing the method he employed, and, upon his explaining it to me, I found it to be extremely simple ; it consisted in shifting his flute from his mouth to one of his

his nostrils: he then blew as before, and the wind issuing from his nose with a sort of snuffing, which deadened the sound, the effect of an echo was so perfectly imitated, that it was impossible not to be struck with the resemblance.

The white woman being the only person in the horde who understood Dutch, I could converse with no one else. I shall never forget, that when she was one day vehemently extolling the excellence of the country she inhabited, she asserted, by way of convincing me of its superiority, that she had never seen a flea in it. According to her, this was a singular kindness of nature, and a peculiarity of the climate: but this same nature, whose pretended affection had protected it from fleas, had at the same time not exempted it from another parasitical animal, in my opinion far more troublesome and disgusting, with which the poor woman swarmed as well as her subjects.

Another and still greater inconvenience, which distinguished this happy spot, was the millions of flies and gnats, which formed such swarms, that the kraal was covered and the  
huts

huts filled with them. Even my tents and waggons were so crowded with them, that I was obliged to sleep every night, while I remained there, in the open air.

Though this country, the excellence of which was so much vaunted to me, was barren, it produced the most handsome and vigorous breeds of domestic animals that I have any where seen in Africa. I purchased several goats, each of which gave me daily as much milk as the best of my cows; and they cost me only a few knives, and steels for striking fire.

The oxen equally exceed in strength those in the eastern colonies: but, from the modes of bringing them up, they are divided into three classes, beasts of burden or draught, saddle-oxen, and war-oxen. Of the former two I shall say nothing, as they are known among the other savage tribes, and even in the colony, as I have already said, where they are broken in after the same manner; observing only, that the Nimiqua saddle-oxen are much superior to the horse in supporting fatigue, and excelled by him in scarcely any thing but swiftness. The  
oxen



oxen selected for this purpose are those which have the least bodies and largest legs.

As to the war-oxen (*bakely-otje*) it was in this horde I saw them for the first time ; which proves how much Kolben was mistaken, when he asserts, that they are used in all the Hottentot nations. Their name is derived from the purpose for which they are employed. They are used in battle, and those in particular are chosen which are most fierce and ungovernable. Being driven on against the enemy, they become furious at the sight of the adverse host, rush on the men, trample them under their feet, gore them with their horns, and pursue them in their flight till they have deprived them of life. They are also employed in defence of flocks and herds. Naturally courageous, they are not only capable of repelling wild beasts, but they even venture to attack them ; and a hyæna, however hungry, will never come near a flock guarded by two or three of these formidable animals, a number of which will even make head against a lion.

The sheep, which stand as high on their  
legs

legs as our goats, are also superior to ours in size. They have not, however, that enormous fat tail, by which those of the Cape and the plantations are distinguished. My Hottentots, accustomed, according to the taste of their nation, to esteem no meat unless very fat, expressed a kind of aversion to animals with a lean, slender switch of a tail hanging down to the ground. The sheep which the Dutch colony now possesses came from Europe. At first it had no sheep; and undoubtedly those which were transported thither were without large tails, for this singularity is unknown in Europe. These tails therefore must have been acquired in Africa, from the change of food, soil, and climate, and thus was formed the variety now seen there. I had still one left, which I had purchased on the road; and several of the Nimiquas, who had never seen any thing like it, could not cease from admiring it. To the widow it was no novelty; for she assured me, that all her husband brought with him, when he removed into that country from Roye-Sand, his native place, were of the same kind as mine; but this property in time disappeared, and at the  
third

third generation their tails became slender like those I saw. The fleece of these sheep was not curled and soft to the touch; on the contrary, it consisted of long flat hair, harsh and shining, and altogether unfit for spinning.

Before I left the horde, I returned the obligations I was under to those who composed it, for the milk with which I had been so abundantly supplied, by a few presents. The chief requested of me a little powder and shot, her stock of which was completely exhausted; so that, being surrounded by Boshmen, she was afraid of being attacked by them by night, especially if they should suspect this to be the reason why they no longer heard the report of any guns from the kraal. When Pinar visited the horde, she had imparted to him her fears, and begged of him a supply: but he rudely refused her, saying that I should soon pass that way, and, being well stocked, could furnish her with whatever she wanted.

Had no motives of gratitude prompted me to oblige this woman, I should have done it from mere pity. The sole person of her complexion amidst these deserts, five leagues distant from any other kraal, supported only by a  
handful



handful of men, she must have possessed great courage and intrepidity to remain in such an alarming situation. Few persons would have displayed equal fortitude in similar circumstances: but she was one of those warlike heroines, of whom I have spoken in my former journey. She rode well, boldly fired at the Boshmen if any made their appearance, and hunted lions as women in Europe hunt hares. I gave her a few pounds of powder, with a due proportion of ball, which were a valuable present to her, of which she certainly would make no bad use.

Colonel Gordon had more than once mentioned to me at the Cape, a sailor of the name of Schoenmaker, who, having deserted from the Company's service, had retired into the desert, and lived among the Nimiquas. This fugitive was a very honest man, according to the report of Gordon, who had met with him in his travels; and the Colonel, thinking he might have it in his power to be of service to me, had remitted me a letter for him, at the same time that he sent me one for Klaas Baster. I had no urgent occasion for seeing Schoenmaker at this time; but the Colonel's letter

might afford him pleasure in his solitude, and I thought I should oblige him by conveying it to him. It was an act of pure civility on my part; yet was it eventually productive of considerable happiness to myself, and procured me services I was far from expecting.

Supposing that Schoenmaker must be known to the widow, I enquired after him. She told me, that he lived at present twelve leagues from the horde, and offered some of her people to conduct me thither. This offer I accepted the more readily, because, in my way to this wandering sailor, I should have to pass another horde, which was a separation from that of which the widow was the chief, and her recommendation would be sure to secure me a good reception.

I arrived at it after five hours travelling; and no doubt information of my visit had been sent thither before me, since at my approach the chief came to meet me with some of his people, to welcome me and express the satisfaction it gave him. Incapable of understanding what he said, or making him any answer, I returned his compliments, without the assistance of my interpreter, in a very simple and  
intelligible

intelligible manner, by offering him a piece of tobacco, and a little hardware, among which were two excellent knives. My present appeared to afford him much pleasure; and, to shew how sensible he was of the service I had done him, he took out of a small leathern bag, which hung from his arm, a bad knife, quite worn out, which he shewed me, shrugging up his shoulders at the same time, in order to make me understand how useles it was become.

This proves at how little expence a savage may be gratified. A simple knife, a bit of tobacco, a glass of brandy, have more effect on a whole horde, than the entrance of an embassador even from the grand Turk, and the profusion of those by whom he is sent. So true it is, that the state of nature is to that of society, as health to disease; and while the invention must be racked to find amusement in the latter, in the former very little is sufficient to give satisfaction.

Our chief was accompanied by an elder brother, who, like him, had been chief of a horde, but, tired probably of such high honour, had abdicated his dignity like a philosopher, and come hither to live in retirement and contempt



of grandeur. His late majesty likewise received from me a mark of respect, in a present of a small knife and a little tobacco.

The moment the chief received my present, he was eager to share it with his brother ; and each with admirable generosity immediately employed his knife to divide the piece of tobacco, and distribute it among those by whom they were accompanied.

It was probably the intention of the two brothers to be beforehand with me in a present, as no doubt they had previously given orders for this purpose. At least, though we were five hundred paces from the horde, two fat sheep arrived, which they requested me to accept.

The true mode of rendering yourself respected by savages is to convince them, by some extraordinary feat, how superior a white man is to the natives of their own country. I had a double-barrelled pistol ; I fired it through the head of each of the sheep, and killed them both. My Nimiquas were acquainted with the report of fire-arms : they had seen fuses in the hands of some of the planters : but they knew nothing of pistols,  
and

and they could not comprehend how an instrument so small could be as *malicious*, that was their expression, as a great one. My cock and hen had equally excited their surprise. They admired the familiarity of those animals, which, as usual, came wandering round me. They were astonished to see them as tame as an ox; but they could not conceive the benefit I reaped from such small birds on my journey. Klaas Baster was my interpreter in this conversation, which I confess afforded me much amusement.

We repaired to the kraal, which consisted of about five-and-twenty huts, and of course was not very populous. In the evening, when the cattle returned from pasture, the women brought me milk; and the quantity was so great, that more than half of it was wasted; even my dogs could not drink it. Kees too, after having run from bowl to bowl to satiate his gluttonous appetite, was obliged to leave it like them.

After these preliminaries the dance commenced, and, to do me the more honour, it was performed near my tent. It was not possible for me to get a moment's sleep; but, as to

my people, they were intoxicated with joy. This always happened in similar halts. Besides pleasure and good cheer, they were excused from work. At length, when day broke, they retired to sleep; while I, though fatigued with the sight and noise of the crowd, took my fusée, and went to beat the country with my dogs.

The place did not promise me much sport; I perceived only a few dwarf trees thinly scattered over the distant mountains, and nothing but oily plants, without a single tree on the plain. I saw several vultures, which appeared to me of a different species from those with which I was already acquainted; but they were so high that I could not shoot any of them. I also found several flocks of ostriches, but they did not allow me to come near them. The rocks were covered with crows, and the plain with larks; but I saw not a single scarce bird to fire at, and killed only one animal worth notice in my whole day's excursion. This was a hare, of the same species with those I had formerly seen at Karow, and known there by the name of *roode-gat-baas* (the hare with the red anus). His ears are not so long as those  
of



of the common hare, and the hind legs also are proportionably shorter. The colour is in general caroty; and on the belly white, like the European hare. I believe no naturalist has mentioned this animal, which I consider as a species, not a variety: and what confirms me in this opinion is, that in the same country there are other hares exactly resembling those of Europe, except that they are smaller. The Hottentots, who have in general an aversion to hare's flesh, would not taste this, though they saw me eat it with pleasure; for in fact it was excellent, and more delicately flavoured than the common hare.

The country afforded one animal which I was very desirous of procuring; but I sought it in vain. Several men of the horde wore its skin for a kross, or cloak; but, as the head and feet were cut off, I was unable to discover to what species it belonged, or what were its characters. The greyish blue colour of the fur, and the length of the hair on the spine of the back, sufficiently recalled to my mind the same parts in the hyæna described by Buffon, which I had an opportunity of seeing several times in Europe; but the smallness of the size

did not agree with that naturalist's description, and I conceive it to have been a species of arctic fox (*isatis*). The savages assured me, that the animal burrows in the earth, and there brings up its young. The fur is soft and beautiful, and I purchased several pieces of it.

When I departed, the chief sent some of his men to accompany me to Schoenmaker's. On my arrival, I found a little man in a red cap and the dress of a Dutch sailor. He was surrounded by a number of charming little girls, entirely naked, the oldest of whom was not nine years of age. Nothing could be more engaging than the sight of this family. The natural graces of these children, their lively endearments, their pleasing features, and even their very nakedness, presented to my mind the image of a brood of young Loves. Their unfortunate protector had deserted twelve years ago, and the fear of being dragged from his retreat had condemned him to perpetual anxiety. Ever alone, ever impelled to shun the society of his fellows, he led a wandering life, and dared not return to the colony.

In such a situation my presence could not but alarm him. The train that followed me,  
the

the company by which I was attended, my colour, my sudden and unexpected arrival, necessarily had a sinister appearance to a man who was continually apprehensive of being betrayed, pursued, and arrested. Fear was depicted on his countenance; even his children, frightened at my approach, fled and disappeared.

My first care was to remove the terrors of which I had been the innocent cause. To put an end to them as speedily as possible, I told the fugitive that I came to deliver into his hands a letter from Colonel Gordon, of which I was the bearer. At the name of Gordon, joy sparkled in his before appalled countenance: he beheld me as a friend; and was eager to testify it by offering me his hand. The little swarm then quickly drew near, and contended who should most load him with careffes. For my part, envious rather of the happiness he must enjoy in such a situation than struck with his apprehensions, I already began to promise myself the satisfaction of completely quieting his mind, and obtaining for him every assurance of being permitted to remain undisturbed. But, though no life could



be more pleasing than that which he then led, the fear which continually haunted him excepted, and no state of freedom more complete; it is clear, from the step he afterwards took, that little was wanting to draw him from it, and induce him again to involve himself in the troubles of social life. For, on my return to the Cape, having obtained his pardon, he was no sooner informed of it, than he returned with all his children, abandoning his huts, his wives, the sports of the field, and that entire liberty of action, for which I would have bartered the richest empires by wholesale.

Being unable to read the Colonel's letter, he desired me to read it to him: which when I had done, he offered me every service in his power. Without informing me of his intention, he ordered an ox and a few sheep to be killed and distributed among my people. His wives, who were all Hottentots, and had hid themselves at my approach, made their appearance one after another, and I gave them a few trifles as well as their children. I say his wives, for he had many; and in this respect he made a free use of the independence arising from his mode of life. Indeed his horde con-

sifted only of his wives, his children, and seven or eight Hottentots in his service. To the place where this horde was encamped, I gave the name of the Seraglio. I afterwards met with three similar hordes on my journey, but their sultans little resembled Schoenmaker: they were villains, of whom I shall hereafter have occasion to speak.

Since my departure from Namero, I observed that my draught-oxen gradually wasted away, though I had been careful not to work them hard, and they had only begun to draw me since we left the Kauffi. But the country afforded only dry plants and a few shrubs; and this kind of diet, to which they were not accustomed like the Nimiqua cattle, did not agree with them. This Schoenmaker observed also, and advised me to quit the country as speedily as possible; offering at the same time, if I would allow him two days to make the necessary preparations, to draw me with his own oxen as far as the Great River. Such an offer could not be otherwise than acceptable: of course it was not refused, and I employed my two days in examining the country and the mountains.

This

This part was no better than that which I had just left. It was destitute of animals, and I found nothing to add to my collection but a new species of starling. I no where saw any of the large kinds of game; the scarcity of which Schoenmaker attributed to the lions and tigers, which he said were so numerous as to drive them away; but I was inclined less to accuse the beasts of prey than the want of food and water.

However, be the cause what it would, I was much vexed at this failure of game. I had only been four months on my journey; yet I had already consumed, for the support of my people, more sheep and oxen than during the whole sixteen months of my former journey. On one hand, the delays I had experienced had considerably diminished my stores: on the other, several of my cattle had died on the road, from accident, fatigue, and thirst. But what gave me most chagrin was, that, after having purchased new teams, I found myself on the point of being obliged to replace them by others.

Hopeless of finding a better country in my present track, I had twenty times embraced the  
design



design of turning towards the east. I was a little acquainted with the confines of Caffraria, and I flattered myself, that, between the chain of Camis and the country of the Tambouquis, which borders on that of the Caffres, I should perhaps be fortunate enough to discover some passage, which would allow me to penetrate into the eastern country. I knew also, that the lofty mountains, which occupy the centre of southern Africa, give rise to many rivers, some of which flow westward to the Atlantic ocean, while others, taking an opposite course, disembogue themselves into the sea on the east. The latter I knew to be more numerous and ample than the former; and I hoped, that by following their course, and the valleys through which they ran, I might escape from the execrable country in which I found myself obliged continually to stop.

One consideration alone checked me. I was almost within sight of the district of the giraffes. These animals, so little known to naturalists, and even to the inhabitants of the colony, had long been the objects of my most eager curiosity. One of the chief motives of my journey had been to study and become acquainted with  
them;

them ; and, as long as I lived, I should never have forgiven myself, if, when an opportunity offered, I had failed to embrace it.

Besides, the dreams of imagination incessantly assailed me, and insinuated, that beyond the river I should find a country more pleasant, more fertile, and more easy to traverse ; and I suffered myself to be imposed on by chimeras, which had no foundation but my extreme desire of meeting new objects.

Klaas Bafter and Schoenmaker told me also a hundred tales, which strengthened my credulity. To hearken to them, the Great River was never dry, its banks were covered with lofty trees, and I should there find every convenience for a pleasing encampment. They spoke to me of rare birds, as well as of hippopotami, rhinoceroses, giraffes, and every kind of game, which abounded in this boasted place, and gave me an ardent desire of arriving there.

Throughout the whole of this canton I found a great number of small vultures, of a pale yellow carnation colour ; the same species as Buffon describes under the name of the Egyptian vulture. The Nimiquas call it *ourigourap*

*gourap* (the white crow). The mountains afforded me a few charming plants, of which I made drawings, and among others two beautiful lilies with a single corolla, one of a crimson, the other of a lemon colour.

Schoenmaker, having completed his preparations, and issued his orders before his departure, directed all his oxen to be yoked to my waggons, and we set off without delay, after having left a few pounds of powder with his horde, to defend it against the Boshmen, if they should attack it in his absence. In less than five hours we came in sight of a horde of the less Nimiquas: and, as my caravan might occasion an alarm, Schoenmaker advanced before us to inform them who we were. This was the largest horde I had yet met with, having not less than fifty or sixty huts, separated into three divisions. At our approach, all the inhabitants assembled together. I had never before seen so many savages in a body; so that it was a sight to me somewhat striking and awful. Curiosity prompted them all to advance. I was surrounded by them. Every one wanted to see and come near me. All spoke at once; so that I heard nothing but a  
con-

confused hum, which, though deafening, was interesting to me from the tone of friendship it breathed.

Presently a female voice was heard, which prevailed over all the rest, and occasioned a general silence. It was that of an old Hottentot named Kakoes, who passed for a witch throughout the whole country. The company opened to make way for her, and she advanced towards me, uttering the most frightful cries. Her howling alarmed me. I was apprehensive it announced the horror she felt at my presence, and that she would excite the horde to fall upon me, by representing me as a suspicious person or an enemy. Who could have thought it? This bellowing was the expression of her good-will. On coming up to me, she pressed my cheeks roughly with both her hands, and embraced me in a similar manner. These tokens of kindness were succeeded by others, mingled with skipping, jumping, and antics of all kinds. Now she spoke to me with inconceivable fire and volubility: then addressing the company in words I did not understand, she pointed to me with her hand, and applied her fist to the pit of my stomach.

My



My interpreter, Klaas Bafter, was by me : but in vain did I request him to explain to me what the pythonesfs said. Scarcely had he begun to translate a single sentence, before she had finished ten more. At length expressing herself more clearly, with a gesture too significant for me to misapprehend, she demanded of me *some of the water of my country*. This very intelligible language I answered by a bumper of brandy, which I poured out into a large goblet, and she took it off at a single draught. On this she began to play her pranks more violently than before : she danced, sung, laughed, and cried, all at once ; every now and then presenting me her goblet to fill. This was replenished so often, that at last, her tongue and limbs both failing her, it became necessary to carry the priestess back to her temple.

Hitherto the forceress had appeared to me only as a bacchanalian, a person possessed, or rather a mad woman. I perceived nothing of that craft, that air of being inspired, that affectation of profound science, that quackery, which so well suit her pretended art. Unable to guess the means by which she had impressed on her comrades so high an idea of her superiority,

riority, I inquired by what acts she had manifested her talents, and I discovered her reputation to be founded only on ignorance, prejudice, and ridiculous credulity. The only proof of her power they cited was, that her cattle were never attacked by the lions or tigers: but it is to be observed, her cattle consisted of no more than six sheep and three cows; and as to those belonging to the horde, though very numerous, they were seldom attacked, because they had several war-oxen to defend them, beside their keepers. Thus the real forcerers were the dupes of the forcerers, since they were the only protectors of her few beasts.

The human race, and particularly the ignorant part of it, are struck with every thing extraordinary. I question not but the great renown of this female originated from her very follies, which appeared to the savages to have something in them supernatural; and neither Schoemaker nor Klaas Baster, who had often before mentioned to me the famous Kakoes and her wondrous feats, had the least doubt of her being a great magician. But what most astonished me was, that such a woman should have  
taken

taken it into her head to act the forcerefs; ſince the idea of gaining pre-eminence over others by means of tricks, ſuppoſes an addreſs and cunning ſuperior to the underſtanding of a ſavage, and a kind of calculation of events beyond what ſo unpractiſed a mind is capable of forming. But experience has demonſtrated the poſſibility of weaker impoſing on more enlightened minds, and, arguing from the greater to the leſs, it is not altogether ſo abſurd to believe a little in witchcraft. But, whatever opinion might be entertained of my pythoneſs, it is certain, that the dread of her ſuppoſed power was of great utility, not only to her own horde, but alſo to the adjacent ones. The place ſhe inhabited appeared to the ſavages much more ſecure than any other: accordingly numbers collected round her, and this it was that occaſioned her horde to be ſo populous. The Boſhmen themſelves dreaded her. Theſe robbers never attempted to plunder the territory where ſhe took up her abode; and ſhe had even acquired ſuch an aſcendancy over them, that, if any one of their thefts came to her knowledge, ſhe ſet off immediately, alone and unguarded, proceeded to their retreats in

the midst of the woods, to threaten them with her vengeance, and thus compel them to a restitution of the stolen property.

The country of the less Nimiquas extends in longitude from the mountains of Camis to the sea on the west, and in latitude from Namero to the banks of the Great River. From the information I could collect respecting the number of inhabitants throughout the whole of this tract, I imagine I shall rate the population at the utmost, if I estimate it at six thousand souls: but the frequent attacks of the Boshmen, and still more the aridity of the soil, annually diminish it; so that, perhaps, at some future day this race of people will be totally extinct, like so many others of the south of Africa.

The less Nimiquas, though of a tolerable height, are not so tall as the Caffres or Gonaquas. This circumstance led me to a remark, which is interesting, and I believe new: the people on the east of the southern part of Africa, of which I am speaking, are much superior to those of the west both in moral and physical qualities, while the animals are far inferior.



Kolben has said, that the less Nimiquas practise circumcision, and deprive themselves of one of the testicles. I had with me the [Dutch translation of that author's work; and I took care to inquire into the truth of his assertions, as I visited the different people on my road. My questions were frequently put even with the book in my hand; so that I can affirm with confidence, that the Nimiquas never practise semi-castration, which is in use only among the Gheissequas, a Hottentot nation situate more to the east on the borders of the Great River, of whom I shall soon speak. As to the act of circumcision, which Kolben says is a religious ceremony among the Nimiquas, I assert that they are unacquainted with it; as they are with religion itself, unless the belief they have in the witchcraft of Kakoes be considered as religious faith.

The women of the horde had received my Hottentots with great kindness. This intercourse had very pleasing consequences, and permitted my people to discover very singular charms. Some of them were indiscreet enough to disclose the tender mysteries of love, and whispered me, that certain females among them

had that whimsical elongation, of which I have given a plate and description in my former travels. Klaas Baſter aſſured me I ſhould find the ſame ſingularity in every Nimiqua horde. I was deſirous of aſcertaining whether there were any difference between the one in queſtion, and that which I ſaw in another part of Africa: but, though I might eaſily have obtained much more, they reſuſed to ſatiſfy me in this trifling point. Perſuaded, from the unanimous declarations of all my people, that I ſhould really ſee nothing new, I reſpected their modeſty, and ſuffered my curioſity to reſt ſatiſfied.

The country is not fruitful: its ſterility frequently obliges the inhabitants to change their reſidence; ſo that they are the moſt wandering people in all this part of Africa.

At the Cape and in the colony, this country is ſuppoſed to have gold mines, but without any proof. Some day, perhaps, the Company will attempt to aſcertain the truth of it, by ſending thither able mineralogifts. For my own part I muſt ſay, that I no where diſcovered, among any of the hordes, the leaſt trace or indication of this inhuman metal.

It was not the same with copper. Every where I saw bracelets, necklaces, and ear-rings, of this metal. Some of these ornaments, it is true, were so well made and finely polished, that they must have been manufactured in Europe, and the fruits of an intercourse with the whites. But I saw several others, which, from their grotesque shape and rude workmanship, evidently showed that they were fabricated by the savages themselves. Still more to convince me of it, these toys had among them heterogeneous substances reflecting various hues (*chatoyant*), which indicate the imperfection of the smelting, and the ignorance of the operator.

These ornaments are worn by the Nimiquas in the same manner as by the other savages; yet I observed among them some whimsical peculiarities. I have seen persons with six ear-rings of the same shape in one ear, and none in the other; I have seen some with bracelets from the wrist to the elbow on one arm, while the other arm was bare; I have seen others with one side of the face painted in compartments of various colours, while on the other side both the colours and figures were

different. In general I observed great propensity to ornaments among the less Nimiquas; for their krosses and all their garments were plentifully covered with glass and copper beads, strung on threads, and fastened on every part of their dress. They even wore them in their hair, which was plaistered with grease in the most disgusting manner. Many had their heads covered with a reddish incrustation, composed of grease and a powder resembling brick-dust, with which their hair was so pasted together, that you would have sworn it to be a cap of red mortar. Those who had it in their power to display this luxury of dress were as proud as are our *petits-maitres*, when they can shake a head loaded with powder, perfume, and pomatum. The *nuyp-kros*, or short apron, of the women was adorned with rows of glass beads hanging down to their feet: in other respects they were dressed like the Hottentots, whom I have already mentioned. Mats being very scarce in this canton, as it is destitute of reeds, most of the huts were covered with skins of different animals, but chiefly those of the sheep and ox.

The country of the less Nimiquas is a stran-

ger



ger to rain, unless when a thunder-storm happens; and it is by no means rare for a whole year to pass without one. Its sterility is principally owing to the want of rain-water, and this want is to be ascribed to its topographical situation. From Namero to the Great River, which is its boundary, the land has a gradual ascent, while the mountains at the same time insensibly decline. Beyond the Great River, on the contrary, the mountains rise abruptly, and the land descends again to another chain of rocks situate farther on, so that it is enclosed between two chains as in a basin. From this situation it is easy to perceive, that, having neither forests nor lofty mountains to arrest the clouds, those which come from the north pass freely over it, and proceed on to Camis, where they burst and fall either in rain in the valleys, or in snow on the summits of the mountains, which are the loftiest throughout the south of Africa.

These remarks agree with meteorological observations.

When the rainy season commences at the Cape and in the colony, the rains are found never to extend beyond the thirtieth degree of

latitude, that is to say, beyond the Camis. A person at the foot of those mountains on the south side then experiences a regular monsoon; but if he go farther, the scene is changed, and he will not find a drop of rain. While I resided in the country of the less Nimiquas, I twenty times witnessed, in the most unequivocal manner, how the clouds were attracted by the Camis. Seeing them arrive black and loaded with rain, I fancied we should presently be deluged by them; but they passed swiftly over our heads in their way to the mountains, leaving us perfectly dry. Yet, if the Camis prevent them from watering the earth in their course, it returns them thither in brooks and rivers; for all the streams of this country originate from those mountains, without which resource it would be uninhabitable, and its surface untrodden by man.

Before I quitted the horde of the forcerefs, I endeavoured to procure, from the individuals of which it was composed, a few sheep; for, as I found no game, I had nothing to support my people but my flocks. But the same reason which made me desirous of buying rendered them unwilling to sell. I had recourse to the  
medi-

mediation of Kakoes to little purpose. Though this woman, from friendship to the whites, whom she said she loved to distraction, and from gratitude for my *water*, of which she was still more fond, endeavoured to serve me, I could procure only six sheep. Indeed I might have had oxen more easily; and they would even have sold me more of these than I wanted, if I would have given them in exchange knives, iron, or brass. But I was too little pleased with my last teams to buy others, which probably would prove no better; besides, my cargo of hardware was so diminished by my preceding purchases, that I wished to reserve what I had left for more urgent necessities; and, as to glass beads, the less Nimiquas had such an abundance that they cared but little about them.

Schoenmaker, who knew the country, took upon himself to be our conductor. He pursued a north-east course, towards the copper mountains (*kooper-bergen*), and after five hours travelling persuaded me to unyoke my cattle on the banks of a small river which descended from them.

This was a bad halting place, as will soon appear;

appear ; but as I had some curiosity to examine these mountains, which, I had been told, contained very rich ores of copper, I was well pleased to have it in my power ; and my guide showed me an old mine, which had been opened by order of one of the governors of the Cape, and was now abandoned. Every where, as I traversed the different places we visited, I found broken fragments of the ore, the heaviness of which evinced that they were rich in metal. But I was in quest of virgin copper, and particularly of crystallizations. However, as I could not succeed in finding any after several hours search, I contented myself with a few specimens of malachite. To say the truth, I set little value on these, though I brought them with me to Europe ; and it was with this sort of indifference that I offered them to Romé de l'Isle, on my return to Paris : but I was mistaken in them ; for that naturalist prized them in such a manner, as to make me regret my having collected no more.

The mountains of which I speak are granitic and micaceous. The most remarkable, most common, and at the same time most pleasing tree found there, is a particular species of aloe, called



called by the Nimiquas *karap*, by the Dutch *kocker-boom* (quiver-tree), and by botanists *aloe dichotoma*. This aloe rises to the height of twenty-five or thirty feet: its trunk is smooth, and the bark white. When young, and the trunk not more than four or five feet long, it terminates with a single tuft of leaves, which, like those of the ananas, spread and form a crown, from the midst of which all its flowers issue. As it grows older, it pushes out lateral branches, perfectly regular and symmetrical, each of which has at its extremity a crown similar to that of the young plant. The *kocker-boom* thrives much better on mountains than in the plain. Instead of long roots penetrating deep into the earth, like those of other trees, it has but a very slight one by which it is fixed to the soil. Accordingly, three inches of mould are sufficient to enable it to grow upon the very rocks, and attain its utmost beauty: but its root is so feeble a support, that I could throw down the largest with a single kick of my foot. The hordes on the west make their quivers of the trunk of this tree when young, whence is derived the name given it by the planters.

My visit to the mine employed the whole of

my

my afternoon, so that night was approaching when I returned to the caravan, and I found that my people had encamped. Though we were in a narrow defile between the mountains, and of course the situation was very unfavourable for an encampment, it was too late to seek a better. To render it still worse, the place was so confined that we could not surround ourselves with fires as usual, being able to make only two; and even these burnt badly, for want of dry wood. No man who travels in the deserts of Africa can take too many precautions: during this night in particular I found it by experience, and I ought to have been on my guard, since some of my Hottentots previously informed me, that they had heard lions in the neighbourhood. But when we are accustomed to danger, we become rash: by living among continual alarms and in perpetual peril, we grow familiar with them; and by the confidence hence arising, which is the parent of courage, they are in reality diminished.

About ten o'clock, as we were sitting in a circle round one of our fires, and drinking tea, my oxen, which had gone up the course of the river in search of pasture, on a sudden came running

running towards us with all their speed, crossed the camp like lightning, and disappeared. My first movement was to run to arms, and that of my people to cry out the Boshmen were coming. These Boshmen constituted the grand object of their fear; so that, as there was none by which they were so powerfully affected, it was always the first that presented itself to their imaginations.

This was a danger of which I thought little; and what convinced me was, the behaviour of my dogs on the one hand, who did not move from their places, joined with the alarm of Kees on the other, who flew to me, and clung closely round me. Certainly neither my ape nor the oxen would have testified such alarm at the approach of Boshmen; and my dogs, instead of making a point as it were, would have run to meet and attack them. Besides, the oxen, after having fled beyond us from fear, had instinctively returned; and their eyes, as well as those of all my other animals, great and small, were turned in the same direction; which clearly indicated to me both the place and nature of the danger, and that it was a tiger or a lion.

In such circumstances what was to be done? Prudence forbade us to advance to attack the animal during the darkness of the night: so that we were forced to remain on the watch till sunrise, in uncertain anxiety and alarm, a thousand times more painful than real danger; only firing a gun, from time to time, towards the place to which our beasts directed their looks. Our guns did not prevent the lions from making their awful and tremendous roar resound from different parts of the mountain: but what greatly heightened our fears, and not without reason, was one of my oxen, which we heard at forty paces distance, struggling for some time, and uttering the hollow moans of an animal in the pangs of death; so that we had no doubt of his having been seized by one of the lions.

Day at length illuming the horizon terminated the long and painful anxiety of my caravan. During the night the lions had in reality approached our camp; for we perceived their footsteps in several places. I went to the spot where we had heard the moaning ox, fully persuaded that he had been devoured: but, to our great surprise, we found he had been wounded



wounded by one of our musket-balls, and was whole, though dead. Immediately I directed him to be cut up, and hastened to quit a place, where, though we had experienced little loss, we had undergone much fear.

The nearest place at which we could stop had been formerly the site of a horde. It was but three leagues from our last camp. To reach it we followed the course of the mountains; but these were so covered with *kooker-booms*, that, finding it impracticable to advance, I directed such of my people as were not wanted to drive my waggons, to proceed before, and kick down all the trees that stood in the way. There was one, however, the beauty of which so much struck me, that I ordered it on that account to be spared. It was nine feet eight inches [ten feet four inches, English,] in circumference, and its branches overshadowed a space of more than a hundred feet in diameter.

From Schoenmaker I learned, that one Van Wyk had inhabited this place, and in consequence I gave the name of this wandering colonist to a little brackish spring which we found there. After having rested my cattle, I con-

tinued my journey. We issued from the mountains through a sort of passage, or defile, which is called the *Poort*, and entered a vast plain, the extent of which I could not discern, as the day was declining. It was quite night when we arrived at *Brand Kraal* (Burnt Kraal), the ancient seat of a horde of Nimiquas.

The roads were so bad, that my caravan had spent a whole day in travelling seven leagues and a half. Our oxen dropped down with fatigue; and, to complete our distress, I beheld not a drop of water, or a single branch of a tree. Yet it was necessary to make fires for the night. I had not yet forgotten the preceding night; and, though we ran less risk in the open plain, I was resolved, if possible, to subject myself to none. For want of wood, therefore, we collected dry cow-dung, and kindled fires, which served both to keep off wild beasts, and to protect us from a piercingly cold south-east wind, which made us shiver. The elevation of the ground at Brand-Kraal must have contributed not a little to the cold we felt; for, from my observations, I found that it stood at least three thousand feet above the level of the sea.

The next morning, day-light enabled me to perceive the wide arid plain on which we encamped. I shuddered with terror, while measuring with my eye the immense space we had to cross. All was sand and pebbles. Here and there I could with difficulty discover a kooker-boom; but the plain abounded with vast clumps of euphorbia. A few low hills rose above the surface of this sea of sand; but these diminished in height as they advanced towards the north, and the horizon appeared to be the end of the world.

The more hideous this desert, the more necessary it was for us to be eager in quitting it. We directed our course towards a little cluster of hills, which at a distance seemed to me to resemble that at False-bay, called Hanging-Lip, and on account of this resemblance I gave it the same name. I flattered myself with the hope of finding there some hollow or basin containing water for my cattle; and my hope was strengthened by the appearance of four men descending from it. To make them hear and observe me, I fired off a gun. I intended, if the rock had no water, to ask them where I could find some. They per-



ceived me, no doubt; but they suddenly disappeared, and it was to no purpose that I went with some of my people in search of them, and called to them aloud; we could neither prevail on them to show themselves, nor discover where they were hidden.

My situation in the midst of this parched desert became very alarming. Consulting Schoenmaker, who alone could extricate me from my difficulties by his knowledge of the country, he said there was a spring four leagues farther on, but it would be difficult for him to find it, as there were neither trees nor any other objects to serve him as land-marks; so that I had little to reckon upon, except a lucky hit. However, it was possible that, by searching the cluster of hills we were about to ascend, we might discover the place where the spring was; and this I accordingly proposed.

In fact, after a tiresome march of six hours, I observed on a hillock eight men, who seemed to be watching our course. We advanced towards them; at our approach they fled; but in a hollow we saw several huts, which no doubt were theirs. A habitation in such a desert, in a place which afforded no kind of pasture,



pasture, informed me that these people were Boshmen: yet, as our arms left us no reason to fear them, notwithstanding their number, we repaired to the huts. Our arrival had put to flight every inhabitant. We found in them nothing but a few pieces of dried meat, and a bag of locusts; but we discovered the spring which we so eagerly sought; and, though it was not ample, when we had enlarged its basin, it sufficed to water my whole caravan.

The great fatigue my cattle had undergone for two days, and the need they had of rest, obliged me to encamp there. On the other hand I had to fear, that, if I passed the night there, the owners of the huts would avail themselves of its darkness to attack me by surprise. To protect myself against them, I lighted up a great many fires, and kept strict watch, which indeed prevented them from appearing; and the next day, on my departure, I made a general discharge of all my guns, to let them know I was in a situation to defend myself, and had nothing to fear, if the hope of plunder should induce them to follow me. However, while thus announcing that I was not afraid of them as enemies, I acted towards them as a

O 3

friend.

friend. I respected the rights of hospitality, which I had enjoyed, it is true, on my own authority; like a generous conqueror, I not only forbade their little store of provision to be touched, but I left in the most considerable of the huts, some tobacco, several articles of hardware, and a few joints of the ox which had been killed in the mountains.

About ten in the morning we halted at the foot of a cluster of granite rocks, covered with kooker-booms. The place being destitute of water, I expected nothing but to indulge in gloomy reflections, little hoping to find a phenomenon, which, being new to me, afforded me great delight. This was a monstrous nest, occupying great part of a large and strong aloe. It was composed of a multitude of cells, and served as a retreat to an immense number of birds of the same species. Klaas Baster and Schoenmaker had already spoken to me several times of these singular edifices, but hitherto fortune had never thrown one in my way. I remained a long while contemplating it. Every moment flights of birds issued from it, and dispersed themselves over the plain; while others returned to it, bringing in their bills the necessary

cessary materials for constructing a new apartment, or repairing their old one. Each couple had its separate nest in the common habitation. It was a true republic. We know several species of insects that live thus in one dwelling, and have social manners. There are societies of this kind even among certain quadrupeds; but hitherto I was unacquainted with any among birds. However, I have had several opportunities of studying these republics, and I shall elsewhere speak of them more fully.

From the hill of the great nest we went to encamp and spend the night, five leagues farther on, at Zebra-Fountain. The word fountain told me I should find water there; but it was so brackish, that none of us could drink it, and in such small quantity as not to suffice for my oxen.

The day following was still more laborious; for the sand, growing more fine, became less stable. Fourteen oxen were harnessed to each waggon, and they were relieved every hour; yet the wheels sunk so deep into the sand, the heat was so intense, and the beasts were so weakened by fatigue and the want of food and water, that they advanced very slowly. I my-

self, whether it were the physical effect of the temperature of the air, or the moral effect of the anxiety arising from my new and alarming situation, was dejected and disheartened: the view of a silent and unbounded horizon had wearied my mind by a painful idea too long continued.

Happily a few hours march gave birth to hope. The plain suddenly changed its appearance. The sand and soil were covered with a particular grass, called Bothmen's grass, the seeds of which are eaten by the savages. Even the hills wore a less naked aspect. We discerned upon them a few little stunted shrubs, among large kooker-booms, here and there between the micaceous rocks, the brilliant surfaces of which, continually changing the hues they reflected, dazzled our eyes. The plain was strewn with large fragments of quartz, as white as snow, the base of which, or that part of them that was in contact with the earth, had the colour and semitransparency of a pale emerald. Probably the soil contained metallic molecules, which, penetrating the portions of quartz with which they came into contact, gave them this hue.



hue. However this might be, I found coppery pyrites and green-coloured crystals, in the clefts of the rocks and masses of stone.

The ground on which we walked was covered with grass; and I hoped this grass, though dry, would supply food for my oxen, since those of the country ate it readily in that state; but, notwithstanding the hunger they had long suffered, they refused it. From its extreme dryness, indeed, its edges were rendered so cutting, that such of my cattle as attempted to eat it had their lips and tongues quickly covered with blood.

I panted with all the impatience that springs from distress, for the moment when I should arrive at the Great River; that river, which I had been told was never dry, and the banks of which had been depicted to me as so pleasant and fertile! Every instant I dreaded to see our teams drop down with fatigue before they reached it, as the former had done. My eyes were on the stretch forwards, looking for those numerous trees which I had been told covered its borders. No trees yet appeared; nor could I discern any thing before us but the vast mountains, at the feet of which the river was  
said

said to flow; and their naked and scorched aspect afforded little promise of the great change with which I had fed my hopes.

It was not long, however, before I heard the noise of flowing water towards the north-west. This sound, which announced our safety, made my heart leap for joy, and my people involuntarily uttered a shout of gladness. A second time our pains were on the point of being ended, and I should at length see a river! For, since we quitted that of the Elephants, I had found nothing but the beds of periodical streams, either completely dry, or containing a few puddles of stagnant muddy water. The more speedily to enjoy such an agreeable sight, I mounted on horseback with Klaas, and rode towards the place to which the noise directed me. All those of my people who were not employed about the waggons began to run with me; and my ape, my dogs, and indeed every one of my animals that was at liberty, set off at the same time. We pushed on helter-skelter, contending who should first reach the spot. However, I suffered my animals to precede me a few paces, certain that their smell and their instinct would lead me by the shortest

shortest road. The barkings, the cries, the transports of this galloping crowd resembled a troop of bacchanals rather than a company of famished travellers. I shared the joy of every individual. A thousand confused sentiments agitated me at once, and my eyes were filled with involuntary tears. Few men upon earth have suffered pains equal to mine: but then, few have experienced such exquisite pleasure.

My first step, when I arrived at the water, was to leap into it, that I might cool and refresh my limbs, while I was quenching my thirst. Thus I satisfied two urgent wants at once; and my people and all my animals did the same.

The river exhibited a majestic scene. Its breadth, in the narrowest parts of its stream, was equal to that of the Seine at its entrance into Paris: yet, to judge of its usual height from a beach of two hundred paces which it now left dry, it must have been lowered considerably in consequence of the drought. Many rocks, too, were perceptible above the surface of the water, which no doubt were covered when the river was at its height.

Its

Its banks, to a considerable distance, were covered with trees of various species, and in such a quantity as to form a kind of forest. Among them were mimosas, ebonies, called by the natives *sabris*, and wild apricot trees, the fruit of which equalled that which grows in the gardens of Europe. The most remarkable of the shrubs was a species of willow, bearing fruit in bunches, which we called wild grapes: and both shrubs and trees were peopled by an infinite number of birds, the notes of which were unknown to me.

I was filled with delight at the contemplation of these different objects. Congratulating myself for having resolved to pursue this road, instead of seeking one to the east, I was already filled with the hope of adding greatly and quickly to all my collections. In the mean time I sought for a place where there was green pasturage, to pitch my camp; for every where around the grass appeared completely burnt up. Klaas, whom I sent to make discoveries, came to tell me that there was no other. Schoenmaker himself and Baster, upon our arrival, had been astonished at the state of the shore, which they had previously painted



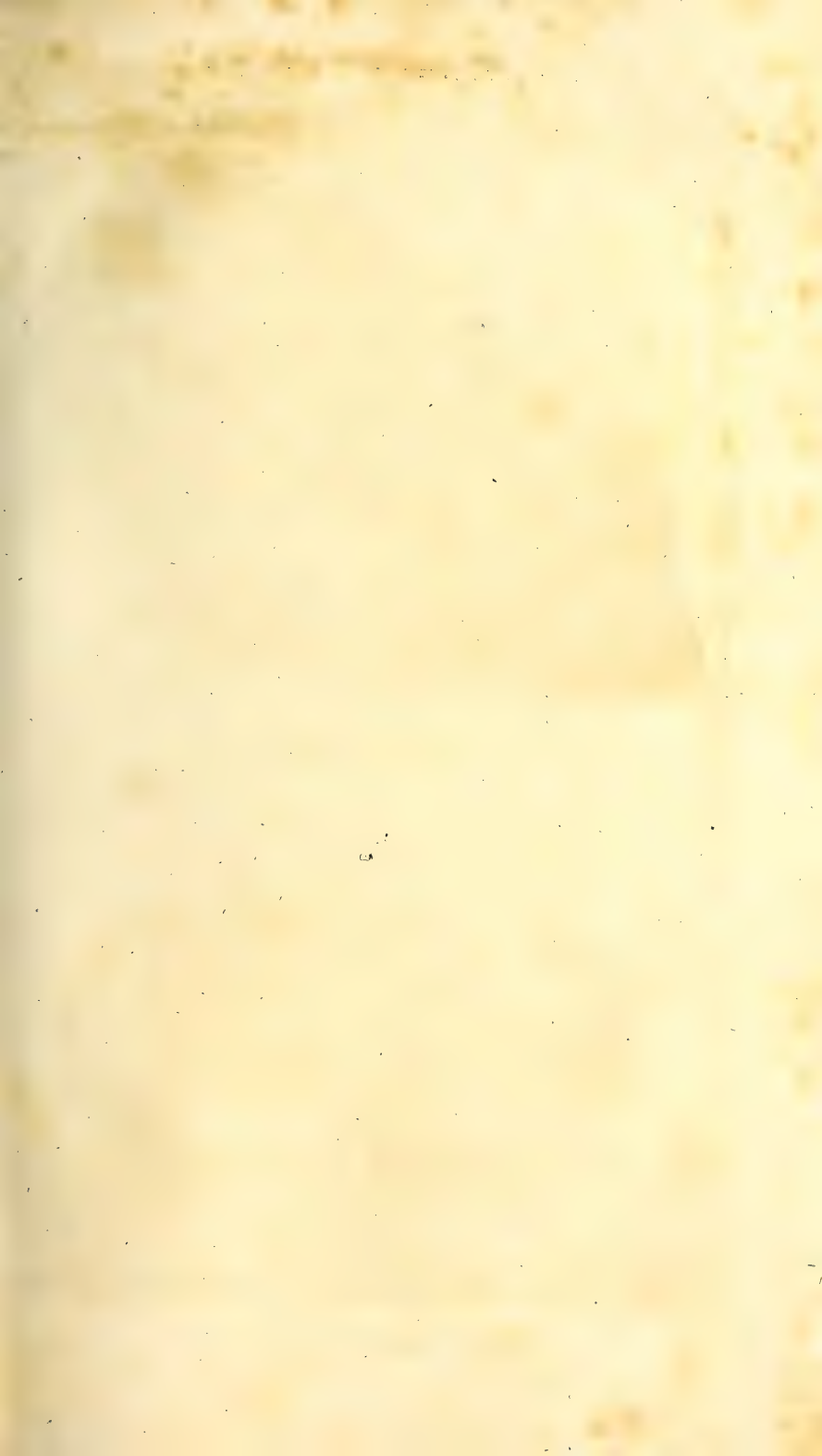
to me in such pleasing colours; and they ascribed the alteration to the drought which had prevailed during the rainy season, and which had been greater than was ever known in the memory of man.

From these observations it followed, that I had ill chosen my time for travelling; but regret afforded no remedy for my situation, and a remedy was what I wanted. Weak and fatigued as my cattle were, I could not think of making them cross the river; for they must all have perished in it: besides, the opposite bank did not appear better furnished with food for them than that where we were. My sole recourse was to search afresh for some spot that was less scorched. I sent every one out upon this expedition; and, towards evening, information was brought me of a place where the Boshmen's grass was a little less dried up than elsewhere. It is true, it required two hours for the cattle to reach this place; but, as I had no alternative, I found myself compelled, for a few days at least, to avail myself of this resource, laborious as it was. Accordingly I directed that eight of my people, well armed, should conduct my herd thither every morning, and bring it back  
in

in the evening. It was not necessary to send my horses; for a species of reed grew in some parts of the river, the tops and young shoots of which they ate greedily. I also found some little thorny cucumbers, about the size of a hen's egg, which were excellent food for us, and their leaves as pleasing to them. In a very short time they were able to find these without my assistance. My goats and sheep were well satisfied with the leaves and bark of the shrubs which grew under the shadow of the large trees. My cows and oxen were the only animals that I could not prevent from suffering by the season, and these were the most necessary to me of all.

With regard to ourselves, the neighbourhood of the river attracted to the plain a considerable quantity of game, which promised us an abundant supply of food. We had plenty of spring-buck antelopes, zebras, koe-does, ostriches, and birds of every kind: and in the fish of the river we had another resource.

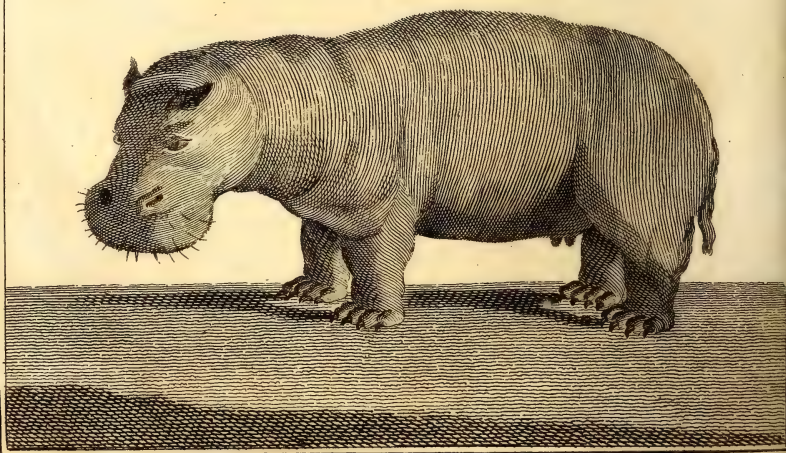
Having angled with the rod and line only, we caught but two sorts of fish: one similar to the carp of the Rhine; the other black, without scales, fifteen or eighteen inches long,  
and







HEAD OF A MALE HIPPOPOTAMUS .



FEMALE HIPPOPOTAMUS .



and in shape resembling the barbel. But the river had several smaller kinds, which we caught with our net, and they made us excellent fries.

This river abounded likewise with hippopotami. I heard them bellow and blow on every side. My curiosity being excited to observe them, I ascended a rock, the elevated point of which projected into the current, and thence I perceived one walking at the bottom of the river. I observed that the colour of the animal, which when he is dry is grey, and appears blueish when his skin is wet, was of a very deep blue in this situation.

I killed this hippopotamus as it rose to the surface to breathe. My people, instantly running up, drew it ashore. It was a very old female: in their astonishment, and to express its size, they called it the grandmother of the river. I have preserved its tusks, which are six inches in length, measured along their curvity, and three inches three lines in circumference just above the root. As I have seen no plate of this animal that faithfully represents it, the reader will no doubt thank me for  
placing

placing one here, much more correct than any he will find elsewhere.

As I walked along the beach, I found among the pebbles, with which the sand was covered, agates marked with arborizations, onyxes, crystals of pseudo-amethyst, and a number of pieces of quartz with singular marks.

I also saw one extraordinary stone, to which I cannot yet give a name. It is as large as a nutmeg, has a varying splendour like the opal or cat's eye, but is of a browner hue, with a gold-coloured belt. It strikes fire with steel. Since my return to Europe, I have sought for such in vain in cabinets and among traders, but I have been able no where to meet with one. Neither the naturalist nor the jeweller knows it. This stone at present is in Holland, in the possession of one of my friends, Raye de Breukelward, and constitutes a part of his valuable collection.

There were also on the shore little banks of heavy black sand, consisting of fragments of crystals. Though the smallness of the sand prevented me from counting the sides of the crystals, I was inclined to take them for gar-  
nets

nets, because, when I brought them near my compass, they moved the needle of it. Perhaps, however, this magnetic property might be owing to particles of iron distinct from the crystals, which blackened the whole mass, and imparted to it its own colour.

The trees and shrubs were frequented, as I have already observed, by an immense quantity of birds of new species. There were a great many little ones, in particular, on a sort of broom with yellow campaniform flowers, and on a jessamin resembling both in leaf and flower that of Spain, but with scarcely any smell.

Each species of bird had its favourite tree, which it never quitted. For instance, there was a thorny shrub on which I saw hundreds of little paroquets, and I saw none upon any other. No doubt they were attracted by the fruit and nuts of the bush. This bird, larger than that improperly called the Brazilian sparrow, has the bill of a saffron yellow inclining to red; the forepart of the neck is rose-coloured, and the forehead somewhat deeper; the tail, which is very short, is green, dashed with rose-colour and black, the rump blue, and the rest of the body green. It is a new species.

In a very little time, by the assistance of Klaas, who was become very intelligent and skilful in procuring specimens for my collection, I obtained every species of bird I could desire. But we particularly declared war against the paroquets I have just described, because they were good food, and served to supply our table. Being always in great numbers on one bush, I could easily kill several at a shot ; but it was difficult to get them out of the middle of the bush, from the thorns scratching and tearing my hands ; and this inevitable inconvenience was even so painful as often to deter me.

The shrub of which I speak has its thorns placed alternately at every knot : one pointing upwards, long, sharp, and straight ; the other downwards, equally dangerous, and curved like the talon of a bird of prey. The Nimiquas call this plant *caroop* ; I named it the *traitrefs*, because as you thrust your hand into the bush, the straight thorn pricks you, and as you draw it back, the crooked one catches hold of the flesh and tears it.

Notwithstanding this singularity, no naturalist hitherto, at least none that I know, has spoken of it : not even Paterson, though he



must have seen it, since it is very plentiful on the banks of the river; and he accompanied Gordon, when this gentleman gave the river the name of Orange. Not having seen the flower of this shrub, I drew it as I found it, with the fruit only, which is of a deep red when ripe. The paroquets alone crack the stone of it and eat the kernel; but the pulp of it is not good.

Schoenmaker's oxen had suffered greatly from the fatigues of the journey; and the indifferent forage of the place was not calculated to recover them. He requested me therefore to allow him to quit me. As I perceived he had no motive for this but the gradual deterioration of his cattle, I offered, if he would consent to accompany me a little longer, to send his people and teams back to his plantation, with four of my hunters as a guard. To this he consented; and in consequence, as he knew the river, and that my oxen in their exhausted condition were incapable of rendering me any service, he advised me to proceed higher up the stream; assuring me, that by so doing I should find better forage for them.

This advice was good, and I followed it.

But as it was impracticable for us to coast along the bank of the river, on account of the forests of trees which bordered it, it was determined that we should return back to Zebra-Fountain, and thence, proceeding northward, regain the river. When we arrived at the fountain, we pointed out to my hunters the road we should take, that they might find us on their return; and, when they set off with the men and cattle of Schoenmaker, we proceeded on our way.

Three hours travelling sufficed to bring us back to the wood which skirted the river. But on entering it we perceived, not without alarm, the fresh steps of two lions, which we judged to be a male and female, and which had consequently taken up their abode in this quarter. The nearness of these redoubtable guests, giving us reason to apprehend an attack in the night, we were obliged to be more than usual on our guard, and particularly to keep large fires burning round our camp to prevent their approach. In the mean time night was coming on, and perhaps it would not be easy to find at the moment the quantity of dry wood requisite for the purpose.

A lucky accident supplied us with more than  
sufficient

sufficient for our wants. The river during its inundations had brought down with it various trees of different sorts and sizes. Two hundred paces from us was a vast mimosa, which had stopped a great number of others; and they were so heaped up as to form a natural pile of considerable magnitude.

My people, without taking the trouble to collect what was necessary, kindled this pile; and in an instant we had a huge bonfire, which not only continued the whole night, but even some time in the morning of the next day. The place was enlightened, to a considerable distance, as much as if it had been broad day. But the conflagration was so violent, and the flames in their ascent carried up with them such a number of sparks and burning coals, that my camp, though two hundred paces off, was not out of the reach of this fiery shower; and it was even necessary to take some precautions to secure my powder. All the trees round were burnt as they stood; and such as were more than fifty paces distant had their leaves scorched.

The fire kept off the lions, it is true; but it drove away the birds also; and in the morning

we could not discover a single one, though during the night we had heard numbers on the wing; and many, deceived or blinded by the light of the fire, had rushed into the flames, or perished in the smoke. Those consuming fires, which I have often spread over vast plains; those forests burnt by me to open a road for my caravan, or to keep off beasts of prey; that destructive power with which I surrounded myself at will, while attended only by a handful of men, with a few insignificant weapons, and the scanty equipage of a freebooter; frequently turned my mind to a retrospective view of times past, and presented to it the history of robbers far more famous, far more illustrious, more highly honoured, and much more imperious, ambitious of sway, insolent in the exercise of their wills, and wantonly capricious; and I was astonished that, amid the ferment of passions which agitate the minds of men, we did not more frequently see whole towns given up to the flames, with their inhabitants, their wealth, and their arts; and great poets, after these grand spectacles, exalting into heroes the madmen who had perpetrated these acts for their amusement, and  
holding



holding them up as models for imitation to the madmen by whom they should be succeeded.

My morning walk offered me nothing new. But, as I was advancing along the banks of the river, I was much astonished to hear the report of guns; and I asked Schoenmaker, who was with me, from whence they could proceed. He had resided on the banks of the river, and was consequently acquainted with the country; and he told me, that the persons by whom they were fired were probably Matthew Moodel and Bernfry, hunting hippopotami.

I knew both these men by name, one of whom, like Schoenmaker, was a deserter from the Company; but at the same time they were men of a very different character, being perhaps the most determined villains in all Africa. I had heard of their crimes, and I was not to be informed, that their names were held in the utmost execration, and that they were proscribed even in the colony.

Knowing all this, I could not easily conceive how they had been able to procure powder. To such people, indeed, nothing was sacred; and they might have obtained it by some new theft or murder. On the other hand, it was

possible that they had met with Pinar, and that he had been induced by fear or avarice to give them some in exchange for cattle.

While reasoning on our conjectures as we walked, we perceived the two hunters. They were Pinar himself, and a man whom I took for a Hottentot Baster, but who, as Schoenmaker told me, was Bernfry.

The sight of the two lions, whose footsteps we had perceived the preceding evening, would not have inspired us with more horror; and that of Bernfry was particularly displeasing to Schoenmaker, who had been his neighbour on the banks of the Green-River, and had been compelled, by his daily quarrels with him, to quit the place, and settle where I found him.

The two hunters had perceived us, and came towards us. Schoenmaker, warmed with resentment at the sight of his enemy, yet obliged to restrain it, had only time to say to me in a low voice: "Be upon your guard, the villain will play you some trick."

Pinar accosted me in order to inform me, that half a league farther on I should find a good place for encamping with my people and cattle; and he offered to conduct me thither. This

news

news was the more agreeable to me, as it pointed out to me what I sought. Thither I repaired under his guidance, with my whole caravan; but he had not told me that I should also find his waggon there; and I was much grieved when I found myself again condemned to be his neighbour. However, as I was under a sort of obligation to him for the information he had just given me, I invited him and his companion to enter my tent when it was erected, and treated them with tea, coffee, chocolate, and a bottle or two of wine. My design, in thus leading them to spend the afternoon in the Dutch fashion, was to employ them and divert their attention till night, and thus prevent a quarrel from taking place between Schoenmaker and Bernfry, which would have been inevitable, had they not both been under my eye.

My intention, however, was frustrated; and the very precaution that I took to prevent a quarrel occasioned one.

Pinar, coarse in his jests, and naturally vulgar, wanted to raise a laugh at the expence of Schoenmaker, and turn his old occupation of a seaman into ridicule. Such is the prejudice  
of

of the African planters: considered themselves as peasants at the Cape, they look upon the subalterns in the Company's service with contempt.

Schoenmaker appeared hurt at the coarse irony of Pinar, yet kept his temper, and answered his sarcasms without anger or asperity. But Bernfry taking it into his head to crack his joke upon him too, the man whom I had hitherto seen so gentle and peaceable felt all his resentment revive at once. He burst out into a dreadful passion, which it was impossible for me to curb; and, with all the violence of a mind enraged when it can govern itself no longer, he reproached him with the assassination of several Nimiquas, whom he had murdered in order to steal their cattle; and that of a Hottentot girl, who, after having been the victim of his lust, became a sacrifice to his jealousy; with many similar acts of atrocity, which froze my blood to hear. Bernfry, without disowning these imputations, answered only by expressions of equal rage. At length seizing him by the collar with one hand, and taking his fusée in the other, he said: "Thou shalt see, vile sailor, that I shall think nothing  
" of



“ of one charge of powder more, to fend thee  
“ after those whom thou hast mentioned.”

In fact, they both went out determined to fight; and, enraged as they were, I doubted not but one or both would have been killed. I rushed between them to part them. Pinar opposed me, and cried out to me, to let them fight; which would have afforded him an entertaining fight. Schoenmaker himself resisted my endeavours. At length, however, I succeeded in getting him off from his enemy, and pushing the latter out of my tent, I bade him begone.

This adventure affected me much. I foresaw that very unpleasant consequences might arise from it, and could not sleep the whole night. If Bernfry had been to blame in the beginning for jesting his adversary, the latter had been much more so from the violence of his expressions. As it was necessary for me to be on good terms with all those with whom I had to live, or whom I had occasion to visit, I could have wished to have had no cause of complaint either against Schoenmaker, whose zeal and fidelity I had hitherto every reason to commend, or against Bernfry, whose crimes  
had

had perhaps been exaggerated. I could make myself the master of any of them, and give laws to all : but I should have been under the necessity of continuing to act as I must have done for that purpose ; and instead of a protector, which I wished to be, I must have made myself sovereign and ruler in those peaceful countries. This would have been somewhat too troublesome for a hunter of birds ; so I chose to manage the affair in the European way, by simple and civil means only.

Conformably with this principle, I the next morning invited Pinar and his companion to breakfast with me. Schoenmaker was one of the party. During the night their heads had cooled a little ; and that they might not be heated again, I took care to give them neither wine nor brandy. My precaution succeeded so well, that I effected a reconciliation between all three, and prevailed on them to shake hands, according to the Dutch formulary of friendship.

Bernfry resided and had his cattle in a horde a few leagues distant. Thither he offered to conduct mine, assuring me that I should find better pasture for the recovery of them than  
any

any where in this quarter. Interesting as this information was to me, I resolved to verify it before I confided in it. I repaired to the place, therefore, with Klaas and Bernfry, and found that my new acquaintance had not deceived me. I had never yet seen any pasturage equal to it since I left Namero: it is true, it consisted solely of Boshmen's grafs, to which my cattle were not accustomed; but the country afforded no other; and this kind of grafs at least, though a little dry, was in great plenty.

Bernfry remained with his horde, to wait for the arrival of my caravan. It had taken us six hours to reach it, though on horseback, and consequently I could not get back to my camp by day-light. Apprehensive of losing myself in the night on a road with which I was unacquainted, I resolved to sleep at the horde, and we returned the next morning, driving before us six sheep which I had purchased, and two goats that had just yeaned.

On my arrival I found a new cause of uneasiness. Pinar, availing himself of my absence, had renewed his attempts to entice my people from my service, and had succeeded in seducing Klaas Baster and one of his Hottentots. I

was

was incensed at this act of treachery, but much more at the ingratitude and infidelity of Baster, who had entered into an engagement with me, and was in my pay. Fired with just resentment, I sent for him; and without a word of reproach, I put into his hand the money we had agreed upon, and ordered him instantly to withdraw, as I had no further occasion for his services.

So unexpected a dismissal mortified and humbled him. Swanepoel seized this moment of shame to point out to him his fault; and he spoke with the more warmth, because he knew he should render me a considerable service by bringing him back, as he understood the languages of the several people among whom we were going to travel. In short, the negotiation was so successful, that two hours after Baster came to me to beg pardon for his folly, and to return me my money. To convince him of my forgetting the whole, I made him a present of what he had received. But Pinar no sooner heard this winding-up of his plot, than, dreading the just reproaches he had reason to expect from me, he instantly yoked his oxen to his waggon, and departed without saying a word to any one.

The



The continual follies of this imprudent and inconsiderate man foreboded him no good. With such conduct, careless whom he offended, he could not fail of running to his destruction by going among the savages, who are naturally good and ingenuous, but easily provoked to anger, and dreadful in their vengeance. The reader may remember what I have already said of the character of this man, who had no other object but to make a fortune by his journeys, and gave himself little concern about the result of mine. His aim was to intimidate, lay waste, and plunder. All this was sufficiently practicable in the country in which we were: but it was not so easy for a man devoid of genius, destitute of means, and having formed no regular plan, to attain his ends without some misadventure, and soon or late he might be caught unawares.

This was what happened. Could I have seen him before his sudden disappearance, humanity would assuredly have enjoined it me as a duty, to warn him of the inevitable dangers to which he exposed himself, and of which he in fact became the victim. His Hottentots massacred, his goods and baggage rifled, and  
himself

himself escaping with life by little less than a miracle, made up the sum of this turbulent traveller's success. Notwithstanding the reasons I had to complain of him, I aver, that had I been acquainted with his situation in time, I would instantly have flown to his assistance. But I did not hear of his adventure till my return, which was four months after it happened.

It being impossible for me, on account of my cattle, to remain much longer in the encampment I occupied, I was obliged to seek another without delay. Schoenmaker had spoken of a wood, situated by a river, well calculated for my purpose. I went to examine it, and, finding it such as he had described, I transported thither my caravan. My tents were erected near the water, but at such a distance as to be secure from inundation; and, as I had every reason to believe that I should be compelled to remain here some time, I caused an enclosure to be formed, to contain, during the night, such of my animals as I chose to keep near me.

I purposed to send to the pasture ground of Bernfry's horde, my horned cattle only. I had

no reason to apprehend that these would be carried off by the Boshmen; as the horde was sufficiently numerous to be secure from the attacks of these robbers. Besides, I ordered the herd to be driven thither by four of my people, well armed, who were to guard it night and day; and, if any thing happened, I could easily repair to their assistance, as the pasture was not more than four leagues from my camp.

All my hopes centred in the recovery of my oxen by this fresh grass. Without this, I should be stopped again, and it would be impossible for me to continue my journey. I was not in the least perplexed about the food of my goats, sheep, and horses. Every where along the shore, as well as in the woods, they found abundance of those prickly cucumbers of which they were so fond.

For our parts, beside the plentiful means of subsistence afforded by fishing and hunting, we had a resource in the hippopotami, which were very numerous in the river, and, from a particular circumstance, very easy to be shot at the place where we were encamped.

In some places the water had so little depth as to form shoals. At other places it was

deeper, and contained those cavities which the people of the country call *Zee-Koe-Gat* (sea-cow holes \*). These amphibious animals usually retired into the holes in the day, and such as did so we looked upon as our own; because, when they quitted them, they were obliged to traverse the shallow, where they were so exposed, that we had every advantage for shooting them; and when we could not drive them out of their holes in the day, we kept them there all night by lighting fires on the beach; so that the next day hunger obliged them to quit the water, and to pass before the hunters posted on their road.

In this manner we procured as many as we wished; so that at length my people killed them solely for their skins. My camp was converted into a manufactory of *chanbocks* †. All around there was scarcely any thing to be seen but manufactured skins; and the heated imagination

\* The Dutch colonists call the hippopotamus, or river-horse, the sea-cow. T.

† Chanbocks are a sort of whips or switches, made of the skin of the rhinoceros or hippopotamus: that of the hippopotamus is preferred, because the whips made with it are more pliable, and less apt to break; but such as are made of the skin of the rhinoceros have more beauty.



of my people, forming commercial speculations, was enraptured beforehand with the profit they were hereafter to make.

The mountains abounded with a sort of hare, similar in shape and size to that of Europe, but its skin resembled that of the rabbits of our warrens. We had also in the woods abundance of grouse, different from those with which I was acquainted; partridges of the large species called by the planters pheasants; and a number of new birds, such as I had never seen. These were highly valuable to my collection; and I spent part of my time in procuring some of every kind.

I found likewise many insects and chrysalides under the bark of the mimosas. These trees I had no where seen of such gigantic stature as here: their thorns were frequently sixteen inches long. We read of the mimosa in the translation of Paterfon's Travels, that "the vast extent of its branches, and the "smoothness of its bark, afford a prodigious "multitude of birds an asylum against birds of "prey, as well as against serpents and other "reptiles, which would otherwise destroy both "them and their eggs."

This sentence is written in so confused a manner

manner as to present no clear idea to the mind. It is not easy to conceive how a "smooth bark" and branches of immense extent" should afford a secure shelter against birds of prey. The author, or the translator, no doubt meant to say, that the quantity of branches, and the manner in which they were interwoven, afforded a retreat to the small birds, and the smoothness of its bark prevented reptiles from ascending the tree with ease to devour them. But I know not where the author saw the smooth bark he mentions. Certainly it must be the aloe dichotoma of which he speaks; for I know no tree so rough as the mimosa nilotica, or that has such a wrinkled bark\*.

Sparmann

\* The passage in Paterfon is as follows: "The boughs  
 " afford an asylum to a species of gregarious bird, which  
 " seems guided by instinct in the choice of its habitation,  
 " for which this tree is peculiarly adapted. The stem  
 " being about thirty feet high before it sends out branches,  
 " and covered with a smooth polished bark, the birds are  
 " defended against the different species of snakes and other  
 " reptiles which surround them, and which would other-  
 " wise destroy their eggs; while the extent of the branches  
 " allows sufficient room for the increasing colony; I say  
 " increasing, as these creatures appear extremely prolific."

Hence it appears, that the observation of Vaillant applies  
 only

Sparmann too, speaking of this tree, says, that "its bushy leaves afforded him shelter against the heat of the sun." If Sparmann sometimes enjoyed the shelter afforded him by the mimosa, assuredly it must have been because he was not difficult; and in certain circumstances we are satisfied with very little. For my part I have already said, and I say it again, that the shadow of this tree is so slight as scarcely to darken the ground on which it falls. The truth of this assertion will not be questioned, if it be considered, that its name, which ranges it in the class of sensitive plants, indicates small leaves thinly distributed. I am indebted to the bark and flowers of the mimosa for a number of curious insects; but I never

only to the French translator, who, probably not understanding the meaning of the word gregarious, translated the beginning of the above quotation, as if it had been, "the boughs afford an asylum against rapacious birds." There is also another mistake, but whether imputable to the French translator or to Vaillant we pretend not to say. The tree of which Lieutenant Paterfon speaks is not the *mimosa nilotica*, but, as he himself says, a non-descript species; of course, the ruggedness of the bark of the *mimosa nilotica* by no means proves Paterfon to have been unable to distinguish between rough and smooth, or to have confounded the *mimosa* with the *aloe dichotoma*, which he elsewhere describes. T.

Q 3

found

found it yield much shade, unless there were a number of them crowded together.

These remarks I have allowed myself to make, because a traveller ought to conceal nothing that may lead to error in the sciences. I know the respect due to two such eminent naturalists as Paterfon and Sparmann : but their very reputation makes it a duty to contradict them ; the higher they stand in our esteem, the more is it to be feared that our confidence may lead us to adopt their mistakes. Perhaps, however, the passage in question is a fault of the translator alone.

Bernfry frequently came from his horde to visit my camp, and bring me news of my herd ; but he seldom came without some of his wives. He had a considerable number ; and among them were some very pretty greater Nimi-quas, and some daughters of Boshmen that were still more pleasing, because less black.

Klaas Baster, willing to profit by the residence I was obliged to make on the Great-River, made an agreement with Bernfry for the hire of two of his wives. It is true, I was thought of in the bargain ; for Baster, eager to testify his attachment to me, and make amends for  
his



his fault, came to introduce the two beauties to me, and offer me my choice of them. He judged ill of my wants, and still worse of my wishes. The reader certainly desires not to be my confident: what pretty tales should I have to tell him, what voluptuous pictures to draw, what delightful solitudes, what fine reveries to recall to mind; but it was for this very reason I carried my continence so far. Baster, to avoid the trouble of making a choice, espoused both the sultanas at once. This perhaps was an irregularity; but I allowed it, to avoid greater, and was the accomplice as well as witness of their joys.

After his example, several of my people made similar agreements, either with Bernfry for his wives, or with other women; so that in a few days I had seven married men in my camp.

One day when Bernfry came to visit me, he told me, that, as he went along the river's side, not far from my camp, he had observed a female hippopotamus, which came out of the wood, and appeared to be going towards a zee-koe-gat with her little one. From the size of the young animal, he imagined it to be at most not more than a week old. I had never yet

seen so young a hippopotamus, and curiosity to examine it prompted me to hasten to the place, followed by Bernfry and some of my hunters. My eagerness was so great, and I ran so heedlessly, that I was guilty of an act of imprudence, the consequences of which might have proved fatal to me or some of my companions.

On my arrival near the river, as I was leaping from one rock to another, that I might have a better view, I perceived an animal crossing me; and, without giving myself time to examine it, I fired and broke its leg. It was the little hippopotamus of which we were in search. We ran to intercept its passage, and prevent it from gaining the water; but we had scarcely come up to him, when the mother appeared a few paces off, on the edge of the river, running toward us with fearful howlings, and opening wide her tremendous jaws.

This sudden and unexpected appearance made such an impression upon us, that we thought of nothing but speedy flight; and every one threw away his fusil to run the faster. I hesitated not to do the same with mine, as it

was

was unloaded, and of course useless for my defence. The mother, having recovered her cub, did not attempt to follow us, but returned quietly with it to the water. My hunters told me, that, if I wished to see the young animal again, I must wait for it on the shore, whether it would not fail soon to return with its mother, because it was too young to remain long under water, and besides could not suck there.

After what had passed, I thought this scheme too dangerous, and imagined we should run less risk by attacking the mother in her own element; since there, being less exposed, she would endeavour rather to hide herself and flee than pursue us. My opinion was just: in less than a quarter of an hour, notwithstanding her wiles and apparent menaces, she was killed with her little one; and my swimmers pushed them both before them to the shore.

I sent the young animal to my camp, intending it for the use of my kitchen, if the flesh were good; and I found it excellent, its flavour resembling that of pork and veal.

The mother was flayed, and cut up on the spot. I had ordered a bowl to be brought  
me,

me, which I filled with her milk. It appeared to me much less disagreeable than that of the elephant, and the next day was changed almost wholly into cream. It had an amphibious taste, and a fishy smell, which gave disgust; but I could have made use of it for want of other milk, and in coffee it was even pleasant.

The light of our fires in the night, and the noise of our guns in the day, gave notice of our presence to several hordes of the greater Nimi-quas, situate a few leagues from us on the other side of the river; and they frequently paid me visits in my camp.

So also did the Caminouquas, who dwelt farther off. All of them testified their friendship to me, and I received them with similar sentiments. None of them ever returned without being laden with the produce of my gun. These presents, which were nothing to me, and much to them, procured me friends among all the hordes. All were eager to come to see me, and all invited me to visit them in return.

These comings and goings, the sight of these good savages, who entrusted themselves in my  
hands,



hands, by troops, without fear, and without the least suspicion, always restored me to my natural character, which is that of gentleness, tolerance, and the love of ease; and never were the ideas of conquest and empire, which sometimes spring from obstacles and resistance, so soon or so completely driven away as by the mild and frank behaviour of these sons of nature. Wherever I met with them, all their efforts were exerted to induce me to visit them.

As a more powerful incentive to this, the greater Nimiquas told me, that, two days journey north of their canton, I should find plenty of giraffes and rhinoceroses. Hitherto, as I have already said, I had never seen a giraffe. The part of Africa which I traversed in my first journey afforded none; and what I had yet visited in my second was equally destitute of them, for they never pass the Great River. In one of my hunting excursions, indeed, I had met with two rhinoceroses; but, having only my common fusée with me, I took care not to attack them.

I had long been warned of the danger arising from provoking such an enemy, and experi-

ence has since more than once convinced me of its truth. Of all the animals in Africa, the elephant alone exceeds him in strength; and there are few which attack with equal impetuosity, so that there is none so dangerous. The tiger regularly makes himself heard every day at the rising and setting of the sun; and thus, giving notice of his presence, warns you to be on your guard. The lion, who is accustomed to attack in the night, makes known his presence by his roar. Besides, notwithstanding the ferociousness of these two tyrants of the deserts, a loud noise is sufficient to frighten and drive away either of them. It is not so with the rhinoceros: he is at once a traitor whose coming nothing betrays; an assaulter whom nothing terrifies; and a fury whom resistance renders implacable.

My abode on the left bank of the river had enabled me to traverse the country round me; and I was now desirous of seeing that on the other side. For this purpose it was necessary to cross the river, which the savages who visited me passed by swimming. They had shown me a ford, but it was too far from my camp; I had therefore a raft constructed, of which I

made use whenever I chose to go to the right bank.

The first time I tried it, I had with me two Caminouquas, who had come to my camp. At the sight of my vehicle they were in raptures. I in the mean time could not but wonder at the gross ignorance and little industry of these different races of Africans; who, continually exposed to the danger of having their bowels torn out by the hippopotami, or of being drowned when they cross rivers that are overflowed, are perhaps the only savages upon the face of the earth who have not yet invented some sort of canoe.

I passed the river on my raft with Klaas and the two Caminouquas. We had scarcely landed, when a distressing spectacle met our eyes: it was the carcase of a man half-devoured by a lion, with a bloody assagay by his side. By his clothes, and what remained of his face, the two strangers recognized one of their comrades, who had been missing a week from his kraal, whence he had set out alone to visit me. The footsteps of the wild beast were easily distinguished on the ground. He had defended himself against it for some time, and had even wounded

wounded it, as appeared from the blood on his spear; but he had at length fallen: such are the unfortunate consequences of the inferiority men without fire-arms have in these combats.

We paid the last duties to his sad remains; that is to say, we covered his entrails and what remained of his mangled body with a heap of stones. After this ceremony, which I made a point of performing with them, they left me, to carry the news of the mournful event to their comrades; and I, grieving at having been, though very innocently, the involuntary cause of the death of a human being, gave up my scheme of hunting, and returned to my camp.

I had soon exhausted every thing both these cantons offered worthy of notice for my collection; and I had no wish remaining, but that of quitting them as soon as possible. But to this the state of my cattle was an obstacle. Obligated to feed upon a kind of grass to which they were unaccustomed, they had become absolute skeletons. I never went to see them without being filled with despair. Those of my people who had been sent to guard them, when they were relieved and returned to the  
camp,



camp, which was done at the end of every week, scarcely ever failed to inform me, that some of them were dead. I had resided at the river five weeks, hoping that we should experience rain to restore the verdure of the grass; and during the whole of that period it had rained but once, and then so little as scarcely to lay the dust.

In the mean time the season of extreme heat had begun, the month of November was at hand, and the earth every where burnt up left me no more hope. My Hottentots themselves did not conceal their dejection: I, more accustomed than they to contemplate the future, and more interested in the inevitable ills that awaited us, was perfectly dismayed. Surrounded with insuperable obstacles, I saw the time approaching, when it would be as difficult for me to return to the Cape as to pursue my journey. In vain were my thoughts employed day and night in the invention of means to extricate myself from my difficulty: but whether I remained, or whether I departed, I saw nothing but death and destruction on every side. My courage sunk under these multiplied attacks.

I had

I had many times remarked, that whenever the sky appeared cloudy around us, about twenty-four hours after the river constantly rose five or six inches, and did not regain its former level for some days.

The constant conjunction of these two facts could not do otherwise than strike me; and I concluded from them, that the river had its source in some chain of mountains, whither the clouds were carried that passed over my head, and where they dissolved. My excursions on the right side of the river confirmed this conjecture. Frequently, ascending the mountains, I had perceived others which extended like an amphitheatre; and, rising still more and more as they receded, were lost at a distance.

My perspective glass had even shown me, that, whenever we had clouds in the zenith, it rained in the chain to the north-east; and, in that case, I was certain the next day of seeing an augmentation of the river.

What would I have given to have been placed on those distant mountains, which experienced not the drought by which we were perishing! But how should I get thither? And besides, notwithstanding their rains, perhaps

haps they might still want grass. My glass at least showed me only a parched surface, without either wood or verdure. Thus, to whatever side I directed my views, I perceived nothing but subjects of discouragement. Yet it was necessary to come to some determination, and to extricate myself from the desperate situation in which I was placed.

Wasted as my oxen were, every thing told me I must no longer reckon upon them, but consider them as dead. Thus destitute of cattle, my only resource was to endeavour to preserve my effects, my people, and my other domestic animals. If I left these in the camp, I was certain the men would not want food; and the known fidelity of Swanepoel was a sufficient security for my waggons. In the mean time I could be absent a few weeks, traverse the country beyond the river, and there traffic with the different people I should find for cattle to recruit my teams.

This excursion also would allow me to seek for giraffes, and perhaps to kill some; and so great a pleasure would at least recompense me for the fatigue and expence of a disastrous journey, undertaken at an improper season.

I fixed my departure for the 28th of October, and set off, attended by eight of my fusileers, among whom was Klaas Baster, and eight Nimiquas who agreed to accompany me. All the rest of my former caravan remained at the camp, under the command of Swanepoel. My new one was composed of four dogs; my ape Kees; two horses; six oxen, which I had hired to carry my effects, my provision, and even some instruments, such as my compass and quadrant; and eighteen persons: for Bernfry had requested to travel with us; and, to say the truth, I was as well pleased to have him with me, as to leave him near my camp when I was not there myself.

We crossed the river on the raft, and travelled along its bank towards its source, hoping we should see some giraffes, led to it by the want of drink.

The Nimiquas, who knew the country, advised me, after a march of six hours, to encamp; and to quit the river the next day, in the expectation of finding giraffes in the plain.

During the night, we were disturbed by the roaring of three lions; one of which even came



came so near us, that one of my people saw him. This alarm, by disturbing our sleep, enabled us to set off earlier than usual in the morning.

Though I had two horses, I walked on foot like the rest, for fear of fatiguing them; and I wanted to preserve their strength for any occasion of hunting that might offer. Left to themselves, at full liberty, they quietly followed the caravan, without ever wandering from it, unless to seek prickly cucumbers, which were the only nourishment that could be procured for them.

During a part of the journey, this kind of food was every where to be seen in sufficient plenty: but, as we got farther from the river, it became more scarce. At length it totally failed; and the want of herbage was so great, that I have seen them, what scarcely any one will believe, yet the fact is certainly true, greedily seize the dung that fell from our oxen, and fight over the excrementitious remains of the digested grass.

On the second day we were obliged, as on the first, to travel six long leagues towards the west; and came to encamp near a spring,

which, issuing from the foot of some rocks, and adorned with verdure along its banks, afforded a pleasant situation.

Just, as I arrived at the spring, a secretary was drinking at it. I fired, and killed it; and from this circumstance I called the spring *Secretary-Fountain*.

The Dutch have given this bird the name of *secretaris* (secretary), on account of a bunch of quills behind its head; for in Holland, clerks, when interrupted in their writing, stick their pen in their hair behind the right ear, and to this the tuft of the bird bears some resemblance.

Buffon, speaking of the secretary, says, that it has not been long known at the Cape; since, he adds, neither Kolben, nor other writers after him, who have described the productions of that country, make any mention of it. This is advancing a false assertion, and proving it by another equally untrue.

The secretary is known in the colonies both by the name of *secretaris*, and by that of *slangvreetter*. Kolben speaks of it under the latter appellation; and he certainly knew it, at least from the report of others, since he gives an  
accurate

accurate account of all its various kinds of food.

It is true, in his description he translates the Dutch word *slang-vreeter* by the French word *pélican*, and consequently makes one species only of two very different ones. But Kolben was no naturalist; and his work includes so many errors, that it would be surprising if this did not occur in it. I have been more surprised, I confess, that none of our modern naturalists, even they who speak of the secretary most at large, have taken any notice of three blunt bony protuberances, which it has at the bend and last articulation of its wings, though they are infinitely less conspicuous than in the jacana or kamichi.

This omission I have thought strange, particularly in Buffon, who has not described the bird from the accounts of others, but from an individual which he had before his eyes, and which, I believe, was in the collection of Mauduit. Yet the circumstance is essential, since it takes from the secretary one of its principal distinguishing characters; and these protuberances constitute besides part of the weapons of

this bird, as I shall soon have occasion to observe.

I must allow myself another remark on what Buffon has said. According to him, the secretary differs from rapacious birds by its timid disposition; and this, he says, is so great that, when attacked by its enemies, it has no resource but flight. This is a mistake. They who have had opportunities of studying this bird know, that, living chiefly on reptiles, it is continually at war with them, seeking them every where and attacking them with courage. In proof of this assertion, I appeal to Querhoent, and I shall add the following fact, to which I was myself a witness.

Descending from a mountain to a deep bog, I perceived almost perpendicularly beneath me a bird rising and stooping very rapidly, with very extraordinary motions. Though I was well acquainted with the secretary, and had killed several in the country of Natal, it was impossible for me in my vertical situation to distinguish this, though I suspected it from its actions: and having found means of approaching pretty near it, under cover of some rocks, with-



without noise, and without being perceived, I saw it was actually one fighting with a serpent.

The battle was obstinate, and conducted with equal address on both sides. But the serpent, feeling the inferiority of his strength, employed, in his attempt to flee and regain his hole, that cunning which is ascribed to him; while the bird, guessing his design, stopped him on a sudden, and cut off his retreat, by placing herself before him at a single leap. On whatever side the reptile endeavoured to make his escape, his enemy still appeared before him. Then uniting at once bravery and cunning, he erected himself boldly to intimidate the bird; and, hissing dreadfully, displayed his menacing throat, inflamed eyes, and a head swelled with rage and venom.

Sometimes this threatening appearance produced a momentary suspension of hostilities: but the bird soon returned to the charge; and, covering her body with one of her wings as a buckler, struck her enemy with the bony protuberances of the other, which, like little clubs, served the more effectually to knock him down, as he raised himself to the blow. I

saw him at last stagger and fall: the conqueror then fell upon him to dispatch him, and with one stroke of her beak laid open his skull.

At this instant, having no farther observations to make, I killed her. In her craw, for this bird has one, though no person has noticed it, I found on dissection eleven pretty large lizards; three serpents as long as my arm; eleven small tortoises, very entire, several of which were about two inches in diameter; and a number of locusts and other insects, most of which were sufficiently whole to be worth preserving and adding to my collection. The lizards, serpents, and tortoises, had all received the blow on the head from the beak.

I observed too that, beside this mass of food, the craw contained a sort of ball, as large as the egg of a goose, formed of the vertebræ of serpents and lizards devoured before, shells of little tortoises, and wings, claws, and shields of different kinds of beetles. When this indigestible mass becomes too large, the secretary, no doubt, like other birds of prey, vomits and brings it up. However, from the superabundant quantity of aliment contained in the craw of the one  
I killed,

I killed, it certainly was not hunger that excited it to attack the serpent in the slough, but its natural hatred and antipathy for reptiles.

This antipathy is an inestimable advantage, in a climate which astonishingly favours the multiplication of an infinite number of noxious and venomous animals. Under this point of view, the secretary is really a benefit from the hand of nature: and indeed its utility, and the services it performs, are so well known at the Cape and its environs, that the Hottentots and planters never kill it, but respect its life, as the Dutch do that of the stork, and the Egyptians that of the ibis.

The secretary is easily tamed, and when domesticated will eat any kind of food, dressed or raw. If well fed, it not only lives on amicable terms with the poultry, but, if it sees any quarrel, will run to part the combatants and restore order. It is true, if pinched with hunger, it will take care of itself, and fall without scruple on the ducklings and chickens. But this abuse of confidence, if I may so speak, is but the effect of imperious want, and the pure and simple exercise of that necessity, which  
rigo-

rigorously devotes one half of what has breath to satisfy the appetite of the other.

I have seen these tame secretaries in several plantations. They commonly lay two or three eggs, nearly as large as those of a goose, and as white as those of a hen. The young remain a long time in the nest, because, their legs being long and slender, they cannot easily support themselves. Even at the age of four months they may be seen unable to walk without resting on the heel, which gives them a very awkward appearance. However, as their toes are not so long, and their claws not so crooked, as those of other rapacious birds, they walk with more ease than these. Accordingly, when they are seven months old, and have attained their full growth and size, they display much grace and ease in their motions, which well accord with their stately figure. Vosmaer kept a secretary for some time at the Hague; and he wrote on the bird, from the observations which this living specimen enabled him to make. Buffon, quoting the Dutch naturalist, says after him: "When the painter was employed in designing it, the bird drew near  
" him,



“ him, looked attentively upon his paper,  
“ stretched out its neck, and erected the fea-  
“ thers of its head, as if it admired its figure.  
“ It often came, with its wings raised and its  
“ head projected, to observe curiously what  
“ was doing.”

The instinct and natural qualities of the secretary are sufficiently interesting beyond question, not to oblige its historian to impute to it an admiration of the art of drawing, and a sort of pride at seeing itself delineated. If that of Vosmaer came up to him, stretching out its neck, and erecting its crest, I am persuaded it was neither from curiosity nor rapture, but solely from a sort of habit common to many other birds. We know that most, when domesticated and become familiar, love to have their heads scratched; that this tickling gives them pleasure; and that they approach every one who comes near, stretching out their necks by way of making known their desire. This may be daily seen in Europe in peacocks and parrots.

The secretary is to be met with in all the dry plains near the Cape. I have found it on the east, all along the coast, in Caffraria, and even

very far within the country. But on the west, though that part of Africa has deserts still more parched than any on the eastern side, and of course affords the different kinds of food suited to it, I have seen it no where beyond the country of the Greater Nimiquas. I shall say but one word more on this interesting creature. Its bill is not gallinaceous, as Vosmaer says\*, but that of a rapacious bird: and it has not, as Buffon says, the leg bare of feathers like those of a shore-bird. For the rest I refer to my Ornithology, where I shall give a more minute account of the secretary.

These particulars respecting a very interesting bird, I am persuaded, will sufficiently justify the motives that induced me to give its name to the spring near which we encamped. We spent the night there. The next day four savages, coming to it to drink, recollected my guides, with whom they were acquainted, and invited me to their horde, which they said was

\* We have not Vosmaer, but we apprehend Vaillant confounds him here with Sonnerat. Buffon says: "Sonnerat is mistaken when he reckons the bill of the secretary *gallinaceous*; which is the more strange, as that naturalist remarks that the bird itself is carnivorous." Buff. Birds, vol. vii. p. 322. Smellie's Transl. T.

but

but half a day's journey off at most. I accepted their invitation, and having sent two of them on before with Klaas Baster, to give notice of my coming, I set forward: but the plain was so troublesome to travel over, that it took us up eight hours to pass it.

When I drew near, the chief, a respectable old man, came to meet me, accompanied by part of his horde, according to custom. After the due compliments had passed between us, he made me a present of a couple of sheep for my company, and while they were dressing I went to visit the kraal. At every hut to which I came, I heard the words, *tabacana matte*, (give me some tobacco): I answered *deip matte*, (give me some milk); for I was so thirsty from my journey, that I would at the time have preferred a bowl of milk to ten oxen. My request was complied with readily. Several cows were driven to my tent, which I had milked as I stood by, and deliciously quenched my thirst with the sweet salubrious fluid, which often was my only nutriment.

The old man had not quitted me a moment; and I availed myself of his company to obtain all the information he could give respecting

the country. He, on his part, did not let slip the opportunity of speaking to me of his troubles. He was not far from the river, where hippopotami abounded; and he and his companions would have been very glad to procure some occasionally for food: but, though they had digged holes, and set traps for them, along the shore, they had never been able to catch more than three during the two years they had dwelt there. The creatures, he said, were too cunning for them; though he had no doubt but I, with my fuses, of the effects of which he had heard, might have as many as I pleased.

Such an observation was an indirect request for me to render the horde a service. It gave me an opportunity of making myself friends; and, had not the distress of my situation imposed this on me as a matter of necessity, I would have done it from humanity to serve these poor savages.

I resolved, therefore, to set off the next day in the afternoon, spend the night near the river, and begin the chase the following morning at the peep of dawn. I took with me all my hunters. A party of the horde followed, with some pack-oxen for carrying the fruits of  
our



our sport ; and at day-break all my people were in motion.

Half of our company passed the river by swimming, while the other half remained on my side. When the swimmers had gained the opposite bank, they separated into two parties, one of which went a certain way up the river, and the other down. We did the same on my side. The four parties thus included a part of the river three quarters of a league in extent. I remained alone in the centre of those who were to beat for the game.

At an appointed signal, all were ordered to set out from their posts, and advance slowly towards me, some shouting aloud, others occasionally firing their pieces, in order to drive towards me the hippopotami that might be in that part of the river. They found eight ; and all the parties being assembled at the common centre, patience and address only were wanting to our purpose.

In a short time we had wounded several. Two were even killed ; and the people of the horde were enraptured with joy. But some of them going into the river to drive the dead ones ashore, one of the swimmers received a  
stroke

stroke from the snout of one of the wounded hippopotami, and one had his thigh ripped up by the tusk of another. These accidents made me fear something worse; wherefore I recalled all my people; and, to the great regret of the Nimiquas, put an end to a hunt, which had every prospect of being more productive, but which could not be continued without great risk.

The remainder of the day, and part of the next morning, were employed in cutting up the animals we had killed, and loading our oxen with them. The smell that issued from them, carried to a distance by the winds, drew to the place numbers of hawks and vultures, which followed us for a long time, sailing over our heads.

The vultures appeared to me of a new and unknown species. But I attempted to shoot some of them in vain; for they kept themselves always out of gun-shot, and the report of my fusée did nothing but drive them off without return.

Our arrival at the horde was welcomed with great joy; and this joy was unbounded when it was known, that, except a few pieces for my  
people,

people, I meant to give up the whole of the two animals to the kraal. The chief, as a testimony of their gratitude, requested me, in the name of the whole, to accept a fat ox.

I thanked him for his offer; but, finding him mortified by my refusal, I begged him to give me in exchange a couple of sheep; as at a time of scarcity they might serve us for food on our journey. Before I left him, I made him a present of a knife, and distributed a few glass beads among the women.

To arrive at the canton where I was informed I should certainly find giraffes, I must pass another horde, a few leagues distant from this. I therefore requested him to furnish me with guides to it, and particularly to send some of his people to announce my coming. This was always my custom: when I quitted a horde I procured a recommendation to that to which I was going; and I had always reason to rejoice at having done so. As savages have but few means of protecting themselves against the rapacity of the curious or ill-intentioned, when they receive visits similar to those of a Pinar, and as I wished never to inspire fear, the

precautions I took to secure a welcome ought not to be wondered at.

When we left this horde, we re-passed Secretary-Fountain; and thence taking our course to the north-east, we arrived, after travelling four hours and a half, in a parched plain, where the horde I fought resided. The kraal contained about a score of men, who came to meet me; and every thing I saw had the appearance of profound want.

I was struck, however, with a mark of distinction, which I saw on one of the huts. It was completely covered with the skin of a giraffe. Knowing this quadruped, the tallest on the face of the earth, only from the descriptions and incorrect plates I had seen, I had no suspicion that this was its skin: yet so it was. At length I was in the country it inhabited; I should soon see living ones; and the moment drew near when I should be recompensed, at least in some measure, for the troubles and misfortunes of my journey.

The two sheep which I brought with me would not follow us; and we had had great trouble to bring them as far as the kraal. That

we



we might not be so inconvenienced again, I directed them to be killed, and distributed them, with a few pieces of the hippopotami, among the people of the horde. This present was the more valuable to them, as they had no other food than the milk of a few cows. On quitting them, I had the happiness of adding to it five spring-buck antelopes, which I killed on a hill about a mile from the kraal, and immediately sent to them.

I could not witness the joy this new gift must have produced: but, if I may judge from that occasioned by the former, and the endless thanks made me by those of the horde who accompanied me as guides, my visit to these distressed creatures must have formed an era which they would not soon forget, and the miracles of the great purveyor will be handed down in the horde from generation to generation.

On my arrival at *Ganna-Rivier* (Lion-River), I found it to contain so little water, that we chose its bed for our road. The loose sand with which it was covered was tiresome, it is true; but the bushy trees on its banks compensated for our fatigue, by the shelter they

S 2

afforded

afforded us from the rays of the sun. When night approached, we halted under a great mimosa, and after we had kindled a fire we sat down in a circle round it.

On the tree was one of the vast nests above mentioned, forming the seat of a republic of birds. Whether they were incommoded by the smoke, or mistook the light of our fire for that of day, many of them flitted among the branches, while others by their twittering produced an agreeable though confused noise. This was a favourable opportunity for me to procure some. I ascended the tree, and slipped my hand into one of the cells: but this motion, notwithstanding all my care, having shaken the hive, all the inhabitants took flight, and a prodigious number issued from all the holes at once.

However, I still advanced my hand, and presently touched something, by which I was severely bitten. This surprised me, because the birds that build these nests, being of the same genus as the sparrows of the Cape, could not inflict a wound so painful: consequently some strange species must be in the nest, which I was curious to know. The bite was made:

I did

I did not let go, and soon pulled out of the nest, with equal joy and surprize, two beautiful little parrots, a male and a female.

The presence of these intruders on a foreign republic appeared to me an inexplicable circumstance. The Nimiquas alone were not surprized at it, as they were already acquainted with it by experience; and informed me that, when the republicans have finished their habitations, sometimes birds of another species, stronger than they, drive them out, occupy their place, and as they breed live there in society. Thus, it is not among mankind alone that the weak are oppressed, despoiled, and driven from their homes: birds also have their tyrants, which seize for their own use the product of the labour of others, and have equally arguments at command to prove they have done that to which they had a right.

Day, which compels beasts of prey to retreat to their dens, and restores courage to those animals whose life is innocent and whose manners are peaceful, brought back to the tree the flock of little parrots which the alarm of the night had dispersed. They all arrived in pairs; and before they entered their common abode,

they rested on the branches to see what injury it had suffered. But I observed that parrots only returned, and not one of the original builders, which had been completely banished to a bird.

While I was reflecting on this change of inhabitants, one of my Nimiqua guides came eagerly to impart to me some information, which he imagined would be pleasing.

This man had seen me transported at the sight of a giraffe's skin, when with his horde; and he ran to inform me, that he had just discovered in the neighbourhood one of these animals under a mimosa, browsing on its leaves.

Instantly, ravished with joy, I leaped on one of my horses, made Bernfry mount another, and, attended by my dogs, hastened towards the mimosa. The giraffe was not there; but we saw him crossing the plain towards the west, and we spurred on our horses to overtake him. He trotted on lightly without exerting himself in the least, while we galloped after, firing occasionally at him: however, he insensibly gained upon us; so that after a chase of three hours, our horses being completely out of breath, we were obliged to stop, and soon lost sight of him.

This



This commencement appeared to me no favourable omen. My people had spoken of nothing but pleasure in hunting the giraffe. According to their account, it would be no more than play to me; yet I found considerable difficulty in it. This, however, was not the most vexatious idea to me at the moment.

Our chace had separated us from each other, and from the camp. By my estimation I could not be less than five long leagues from it; and, to alarm me the more, the giraffe having made various turnings and windings in his flight, I could not tell what course to steer to regain it. It was noon. I began to feel the calls of hunger and thirst; and I was alone on a parched soil, exposed to a fervid sun, without the least shelter against its heat, or provision to satisfy my wants.

My horse, panting for breath, was so jaded as to be of no service to me. I could do nothing, therefore, but remain where I was, waiting till some of my people, uneasy at my absence, should come in search of me. But at such a distance, without means of knowing where I was, how could I hope that they would find me? I fired off my fusée a few

times to make Bernfry hear me, who could not be far off, and who had probably lost himself also.

Now and then I saw some grouse pass over my head; and I killed a few, as much to pass away the time as to satisfy my hunger. By means of the pan of my gun, and at the expence of one of my sleeves which served me for tinder, I contrived to light a fire, and broiled my birds.

Though this employed me two hours, it did not prevent my making melancholy reflections. How tediously do the minutes pass in such situations! At length, when I found it was five o'clock by my watch, and saw myself obliged to spend the night there, exposed to the attacks of wild beasts, I began to employ what day-light remained in collecting all the brushwood round, to keep up a fire during the night.

This precaution was unnecessary. The moment when I most despaired of succour, I fancied I heard at a distance the report of guns. I need not express the joy I felt at this signal. I answered by firing both the barrels of my piece. In fact it was made by some of my people,

people, among whom was Bernfry, who had come in search of me. In a short time I heard their voices: they were not long before they joined me, and I set off with them towards my camp.

We had yet time to travel two leagues before night, and then we encamped under some aloes, which we found in our way. Scarcely had we kindled our fires, when we perceived others on the mountain. These my people ascribed to the Boshmen; and they feared that ours, by betraying us, would expose us to the attack of these formidable neighbours. But we were strong enough to have nothing to apprehend, and betook ourselves to rest with tranquillity.

The next day I was joined by my whole caravan. I saw five more giraffes, to which we gave chase; but they employed so many wiles, that, after we had hunted them the whole day, they escaped us through the favour of the night.

I was grieved at this bad success; but what afflicted me most was, that I was on the point of being wholly destitute of provision, having six-and-twenty mouths to supply. I had but  
a few

a few pounds of the flesh of the hippopotamus left: I had just lost two days in useless endeavours to procure food; and I had reason to fear, that those which followed would not be more fortunate. I then regretted my refusal of the ox offered by the Nimiqua chief: for, if fortune should not favour me in the chase next day, I should be obliged to kill one of my own. Luckily I was successful; and the next day, which was the tenth of November, was one of the happiest of my life, the most valuable in my travels, and that which I recall to mind with the greatest satisfaction.

I commenced my chase at sun-rise, in hopes of finding some kind of game to furnish us with food. After walking some hours, on turning a hill we perceived seven giraffes, which my dogs instantly attacked. Six took flight together; the seventh, intercepted by my dogs, fled a different way.

Bernfry was on foot, holding his horse by the bridle. In the twinkling of an eye he was in the saddle, and set off in pursuit of the six. I followed the other full speed; but, in spite of the exertions of my horse, the giraffe so far outstripped



outripped me, that on turning a little hill he was out of sight, and I gave up the pursuit.

My dogs, however, soon came up with him ; so that he was obliged to stop to defend himself. From the place where I was I heard them bark with all their strength ; the sound appeared to me to continue at the same spot ; whence I concluded, that they had the animal at bay, and I spurred my horse instantly towards them.

I had scarce turned the hillock, when I perceived him surrounded by the dogs, and endeavouring by forcible kicks to drive them off. I had only the trouble to alight, and brought him to the ground with a single shot.

Delighted with my victory, I returned to call my people, that the animal might be skinned and cut to pieces. While I was looking for them, I saw Klaas Baster, who with eagerness made signs to me, which at first I did not understand. Looking, however, towards the spot to which he pointed, I perceived with surprise a giraffe standing under a large ebony tree, and assailed by my dogs. Supposing it to be another, I ran towards it ; but it was the one I had just before shot, which had in reality

recovered its feet ; but the moment I was preparing to fire at it a second time, it dropped down dead.

Who would believe that such a conquest should excite transports in my mind bordering on madness? Troubles, fatigues, pressing wants, uncertainty of the future, and sometimes disgust of the past, disappeared together : all fled at the sight of this new prize. I could not satisfy my eyes with contemplating it. I measured its immense height. My eyes turned with astonishment from the animal destroyed to the instrument of destruction. I called and called again my people one after another : and though any one of them could have done as much, though we had killed animals of greater bulk, and much more dangerous, I was the first to kill this ; with this I was about to enrich natural history ; I was about to destroy romance, and establish a truth in my turn.

All my people ran up, and congratulated me on my exploit. Bernfry alone remained behind. In vain did I urge him on with my voice and actions. He had fallen from his horse, bruised his shoulder, and walked slowly, leading his beast by the bridle. When he  
came

came near he told me of his fall. I, without attending to what he said, without considering that he might want help, spoke to him of my victory. He pointed to his shoulder : I pointed to my giraffe. I was so intoxicated with joy, that I should scarcely have thought of wounds of my own.

I have already given some account of the manners and instinct of the giraffe, and I shall say something more. I have brought a skin into Europe ; and if the apartments occupied by an individual were not too low for the height of such an animal, I would have stuffed this skin, so as to exhibit to the curious a faithful representation of it in its natural state.

It remains for me to recite the precautions I took in slaying it, to preserve its coat as entire and uninjured as possible. The account may be useful to other travellers, who, proposing like me to traverse the country of giraffes, may desire like me to bring away their spoils. The curious who have seen the one in my possession, which, though it has been hung up carelessly in my cabinet for seven years, astonished them by being so fresh and entire, have asked me many questions on the subject. The  
particulars

particulars I am going to give will answer all these questions at once; and the account of the process will be received with more pleasure, as it is applicable to any other animal as well as the giraffe.

My first care, when I had killed this animal, was to take all its dimensions with great accuracy, and then to make a drawing of it, reducing my design by an appropriate scale to the proper measures. While I was doing this, my people were employed in supporting the different parts as I drew them.

To say the truth, this operation appeared to them long. Dying with hunger (for they as well as myself had eaten nothing for six-and-thirty hours), they sighed for the moment when it would be finished, that they might feast on the animal. Already, that they might dissect it more quickly, several of them were whetting their knives on the stones. But, as it was my intention to preserve the skin, I meant to take it off myself, and not leave it to them to hack and cut to pieces. In vain did they request me to give it up, assuring me, that I should find plenty of others: but I was not to be duped by this language prompted by hunger; and I fell to work immediately.

First,



First, I divided the skin on the lower part of the body, from the anus to the lower lip. The lip I did not touch; because that part, being of a softer texture than the rest, would shrink more in drying if it were divided, which would disfigure the animal, if at any time an attempt should be made to give it its natural form. After this incision, I made four others, one on the inside of each leg, ascending from the hoof to the belly, and terminating in the first.

This previous operation being performed, nothing remained but to flay the animal; on which business I employed some of my people with their sharpened knives. I took care, however, that the head and hoofs should remain annexed to the skin. This part of the business also I took upon myself, separating the head from the spine at the upper joint of the neck, and the hoofs from the bones of the leg. While I was at work, my Nimiquas went to cut wood, and kindled a fire for our culinary operations. As they were fetching wood, they found a spring, to which I ordered the skin to be conveyed, that it might be cleaned of the blood and other filth; and then relinquished the body of the animal to my hungry companions.

Klaas,

Klaas, ever attentive, ever thinking on me, cut off a few slices which he brought to me when broiled, and I found them excellent. He also laid the shin-bones on the fire. Their marrow, as white and firm as the fat of mutton, was truly delicious. I had never seen any so fine, and much regretted that I had no bread to make a toast. I melted a certain quantity, however, with which I filled the giraffe's bladder, and which afterwards served me a long time to dress slices of the flesh.

After dinner I resumed my work. Klaas had levelled and cleaned a piece of ground about twenty feet square. On this I caused the skin to be stretched out, and confined its edges with large stones.

The planters in these cases use wooden pegs, which they thrust through the skin to keep it forcibly stretched; but this is a faulty method; for the skin dries with an uneven edge, and, when it is wanted for use, the appendages thus occasioned remain, even after the skin has been wetted with water; for what has been distended with too much violence will never after recover its proper tone. However dexterous the naturalist may be, he cannot remedy these

insuperable difficulties when he attempts to put the skin into form ; and the stuffed figure thus made, which he places in his cabinet, very little resembles the animal it is intended to represent.

I had now to dry the skin of my giraffe, remove its grease, and destroy every fermentative cause capable of rotting or damaging it. With this design I directed large fires to be made, that I might have plenty of ashes. These ashes I strewed over the skin, taking care that they covered it equally and completely. In this state it remained a whole night ; and, for fear some hyæna should come in the dark and devour part of it, I pitched my tent close to my treasure.

The dissection of the head and hoofs employed me all the next day, because I would receive no assistance but that of Klaas. The hoofs gave me little trouble ; but with the head it was otherwise. With regard to the latter, we first began by raising the skin of the cheeks and jaws, and removing the flesh underneath, the place of which we supplied by wadding, to restore and preserve the shape. The eyes were treated in much the same way. After

having taken out the ball of the eye, and dried its orbit with hot ashes, I filled the cavity with wadding to support the eyelids.

The most difficult operation was the extraction of the brain, which in the giraffe is of considerable bulk; and this perplexed me much, as I was unwilling to admit either fracture or incision in the skull. At length the idea suggested itself to me of sucking it up as it were by degrees. This we accomplished, by means of a wire which I armed at the point with a tuft of hairs taken from the krosses of my Hottentots, and which, thus converted into a brush, was introduced into the bony receptacle of the brain. When the skull was emptied, I filled it with hot ashes. The forepart of the head, from the nostrils to those bony excrescences I have elsewhere mentioned, which form a kind of horns for the animal, required nothing to be done to it, since it was not fleshy; so that it wanted only drying.

From time to time I renewed the ashes on the skin: I even kept up large fires for several days following, merely for the sake of the ashes. These operated at once by the joint action of their desiccative and alkaline properties,



erties, and succeeded with me perfectly, as may be seen in my cabinet.

I cannot say so much for the common salt, which the planters use on similar occasions. In my opinion, to salt a skin is to spoil it: and this I have seen confirmed among them by experience. Beside that salt does not prevent certain insects from coming to deposit their eggs in them, and injuring the hair; it preserves a certain degree of humidity, and consequently a germ of destruction, which never fails to take effect during the passage by sea, or if it remain long on board a vessel.

Before I brought the skin of a giraffe into Europe, one had arrived in Holland; but, having been put into salt, it was spoiled; as indeed it was before it left the Cape.

With respect to the skeleton of this animal, which makes part of the collection at the Hague, a writer, who is no naturalist, says, in the *Journal de Paris*, May 26, 1788, that he saw there a skin entire, with the skeleton of the beautiful quadruped to which it belonged. The skeleton indeed exists: but, the skin being spoiled, a specimen or sample of it only is commonly shewn to the curious. I have

no doubt but the author, seeing it thus, judged of the whole by the part shewn to him.

I several times examined this beautiful skeleton, on my return from Africa, as well as the remains of the pretended skin, which I can venture to affirm is composed of different parts, most of which are so spoilt, that it would be impossible to cover the animal again with it. If Vosmaer, the superintendant of the collection, has written on the giraffe, assuredly it was not in consequence of the knowledge he obtained from this shapeless skin, but from books or conversation with persons well informed. As a proof of my assertion, I may appeal to the first engraving which he published of this animal, which he afterwards corrected from what I said on my return, and from my drawings which he saw.

The giraffe chews the cud, as all horned animals with cloven feet usually do. Like them, too, it crops the grass; though seldom, because pasture is scarce in the country it inhabits. Its ordinary food is the leaf of a sort of mimosa, called by the natives *kanaap*, and by the planters *kamel-doorn*. The tree being peculiar to the canton, and growing only there,  
this





HEAD OF THE GIRAFFE .



this may be the reason why it takes up its abode in it, and why it is not seen in those regions of the south of Africa where the tree does not grow. This, however, is but a vague conjecture, and which the reports of the ancients seem to contradict.

Its head is unquestionably the most beautiful part of its body. Its mouth is small: its eyes large and animated. Between the eyes, and above the nose, it has a very distinct and prominent tubercle. This is not a fleshy excrescence, but an enlargement of the bony part, the same as the two little bosses, or protuberances, with which its occiput is armed, and which rise as large as a hen's egg, one on each side of the mane at its commencement. Its tongue is rough, and terminates in a point. Each jaw has six grinders on each side; but the lower jaw only has eight cutting teeth in front, while the upper jaw has none.

The hoof is cloven, has no heel, and much resembles that of the ox. It may be observed, however, at the first sight, that the hoof of the fore-foot is larger than that of the hind-foot. The leg is very slender: but the knee is swelled

like that of a stumbling horse [*couronné*], because the animal kneels down to sleep. It has also a large callosity in the middle of the sternum, owing to its usually reposing on it.

If I had never killed a giraffe, I should have thought, with many other naturalists, that its hind-legs were much shorter than the fore ones. This is a mistake: they bear the same proportion to each other as is usual in quadrupeds. I say the same proportion as is usual, because in this respect there are variations, even in animals of the same species. Every one knows, for instance, that mares are lower before than stallions. What deceives us in the giraffe, and occasions this apparent difference between the legs, is the height of the withers, which may exceed that of the crupper from sixteen to twenty inches, according to the age of the animal; and which, when it is seen at a distance in motion, gives the appearance of much greater length to the fore-legs.

If the giraffe stand still, and you view it in front, the effect is very different. As the fore-part of its body is much larger than the hind-part,

part, it completely conceals the latter; so that the animal resembles the standing trunk of a dead tree.

Its gait, when it walks, is neither awkward nor unpleasing; but it is ridiculous enough when it trots; for you would then take it for a limping beast, seeing its head, perched at the extremity of a long neck which never bends, swaying backwards and forwards, the neck and head playing in one piece between the shoulders as on an axis. However, as the length of the neck exceeds that of the legs at least four inches, it is evident that, the length of the head too taken into the account, it can feed on grass without difficulty; and of course is not obliged either to kneel down, or to straddle with its feet, as some authors have asserted.

Its mode of defence, like that of the horse and other solidungulous animals, consists in kicking with the heels. But its hind parts are so light, and its jerks so quick, that the eye cannot count them. They are even sufficient to defend it against the lion, though they are unable to protect it from the impetuous attack of the tiger.

Its horns are never employed in fight. I did not perceive it use them even against my dogs; and these weak and useless weapons would seem but an error of Nature, if Nature could ever commit error, or fail in her designs.

It is a pretty constant rule among animals in general, that males when young resemble females, and have nothing to make them distinguished. This resemblance in youth is not peculiar to many species of quadrupeds, as I shall hereafter show, but is found in numbers of birds, both of those in which the two sexes differ most in the perfect state, and of those which change their colour in the different seasons of the year. Among these there is a fixed period, when the male quits his brilliant plumage for the modest garb of the female; and hence the frequent mistakes of certain naturalists, who in their cabinets bring together animals of different species, or separate others of the same, in contradiction to nature, with which they are little acquainted.

The male and female giraffe resemble each other in external appearance while young. Their obtuse horns terminate in a bundle of  
long



long hairs, which the male loses at the age of three years ; but the female retains it to a later period.

It is the same with the coat, which, a bright sorrel at first, gradually becomes deeper as the animal grows up, and ends at length in a bay-brown in the female, and in a dark-brown approaching to black in the male. A proof of what I advance may be seen in the cabinet of natural history at Leyden, where there is a young giraffe about seven feet high, which was sent by governor Tulbach to professor Allamant, who had it stuffed with great care.

From this difference of colour in giraffes of a certain age, the males may be distinguished from the females at some distance. In both, however, the coat differs as well in the form as in the arrangement of the spots ; and I must remark, that the female when very old acquires the deep colour of the male.

The female is also distinguishable when near by being less tall, and having the knob on the forehead less prominent and conspicuous. Like the cow, she has four teats or dugs ; and, if I may trust to the testimony of the savages, she goes twelve months with young, and has never

more than one at a time. As the plate in my former volumes representing the male giraffe was faulty, because the head was badly executed, the reader will not be displeased to find here a more accurate representation of the part in question on a larger scale.

Five leagues from us toward the west was a horde of Caminouquas, who, no doubt informed of our presence by my fires, came to pay me a visit, and give my party lessons of economy. They fell upon what remained of the giraffe, like so many famished people, and carefully picked up the bones. Even those which my people had thrown away, after eating the marrow, they turned to account. Having broken them to pieces, they borrowed my kettle to boil them, and extracted from them an incredible quantity of fat, which they collected with great joy.

During the nine days I remained here, they were continually travelling from their kraal to my camp, incessantly coming and going, like careful ants, and always carrying away some provision.

I furnished them plentifully with several sorts of antelopes, without giving myself any  
trouble.

trouble. Every day, about four in the afternoon, they came regularly in flocks to drink at the spring; so that, by placing myself in ambuscade, I killed as many as I pleased. Three quarters of a league farther on was a hill, which I called my larder. Every morning at sun-rise it was so covered with grouse, that I could kill more at a single shot than were necessary for our consumption. Thus, after having long experienced the horrors of famine, we suddenly found ourselves in extreme plenty; and I could feed my neighbours with our superfluity, without inconvenience.

I sometimes extended my walks and my hunts as far as their kraal, with intention to study their manners, and become acquainted with them. But they have nothing to distinguish them from the Greater Nimiquas. In weapons, manners, customs, dress, language, and construction of their huts, both are exactly alike.

Beside spring-bock antelopes and grouse, I frequently found buffaloes to afford me sport. At first the giraffes continued to appear in herds of seven or eight; but these timid animals were soon alarmed by our continual firing;

ing ; so that they quitted the canton, and appeared no more. I then rejoiced that I did not yield to the instances of my people, when, urged by hunger, they entreated me to give up to them the giraffe I had killed. The zebras abounded in herds ; and I avenged myself on them for the flight of the giraffes. I would willingly have taken vengeance on two rhinoceroses also, a male and female, which I had an opportunity of seeing one day : but they went too far, and we could not overtake them.

I refrained from attacking the elephants for another reason, though I had frequent opportunities. The profit of their teeth would have tempted me ; but, as I had only beasts of burden, without any waggon, I was afraid of adding too great a weight to that of the giraffe. For these, however, I indemnified myself by a collection, much more easy to carry, of ostrich feathers, while I fed on the eggs of those birds, on which I had often delicious suppers.

The canton being new to me, I could not fail of finding something to add to my collections. I there saw the commencement of the passage of the great and little bee-eaters. The former



former species of these birds is common at the Cape, and even in the southern provinces of France. The latter has a peculiar distinguishing characteristic, which is a tail almost as forked as that of a sparrow; while all the other known species of bee-eaters have the tail cuneiform, the two middle feathers being considerably longer than the rest.

The Nimiquas call this beautiful bird by the name of *tawa* (gall), on account of the fine green which is its principal colour. This pleasing hue is set off by a yellow throat, terminating in a ring of ultramarine.

I bought of my neighbours, the Caminouquas, the skin of a wild cat, which has all the characters of the lynx. I had afterwards opportunities of killing several. This animal is of a very deep sorrel colour; but the ears are black, and tipped with a brush of hair of the same colour. It is a new species, that, as far as my knowledge extends, has not yet been described.

My excursions were frequent, but short; and every day I returned at a certain hour to assist at the renewal of the ashes on my giraffe's skin. The acquisition was so important, that I would not allow this operation to be performed

formed in my absence. After nine days of this warm tanning, perceiving that the skin, though not yet so dry as was necessary for its preservation, would be incapable of having any thing done to it if it were drier, I directed it to be folded in four, and tied with thongs, with the head and feet uppermost. In this state it formed a bundle six feet square by three feet and a half thick.

The difficulty of taking such a burden with me through the whole of my journey suggested to me the idea of leaving it in trust with my good neighbours the Caminouquas, and taking it from them on my return. But I recollected that my plan was to traverse the whole continent of Africa, and then I should never return; and, if I were obliged to return unsuccessful, was it probable that it would be exactly by the same route? Besides, I wished to leave it behind me, and yet to have it constantly under my eyes. I was too much attached to this precious treasure to prevail on myself to abandon it.

On the other hand, I had reason to fear that the skin would spoil for want of care during my absence; and I was convinced how difficult

ficult it would be to procure another, if I lost that which chance had so fortunately put into my hands. The very pains I had taken in curing it gave it, to my apprehension, an additional value. In fine, there was nothing I had so much at heart as to keep it in my own possession; and the following was the method I adopted.

Reflecting on the ground I had travelled over, and the course I had taken, I imagined I could not be more than eighteen or twenty leagues from my camp on Orange River, and consequently I could reach it in four days by travelling straight thither.

It is true, I had accomplished but one of the two motives of my little excursion: it was not sufficient to have become acquainted with the giraffe; I had still to purchase oxen for my waggons; but the country was too barren, and the Caminouquas too wretched, to afford me any supply. I purposed, therefore, to make another wandering excursion among the neighbouring countries, which, perhaps, might be more fortunate; and in the mean time I thought only of putting my giraffe in a place of security.

My



My greatest difficulty was to contrive a mode of carrying it away. Without a waggon, or even the possibility of getting one to the place where we were, I had nothing for this expedition except my oxen: and, not to mention the delays and inconvenience we must experience on our journey from such a bulky pack, its vast weight was too much for the strength of a common ox, and the animal must have sunk under it. It occurred to me, therefore, to hire the two strongest oxen belonging to the horde, and to construct a litter, which being fitted to their shoulders, and obliging them to go side by side, might divide the burden between them. When the machine was finished, I tried it; and it answered the purpose perfectly, to the great astonishment of the Caminouquas, who had never seen any thing of the kind before; and, on my departure, all the horde ran out to admire it. In the eyes of a savage, the most simple invention is considered as almost a prodigy. What pre-eminence over them do we derive from industry improved by practice! But on the other hand, what superiority have they over us, in being able to do without the advantages it procures!

On



On the second day I arrived at Lion-River, which we crossed at the place where we had passed it before: and, towards the evening of the fourth, agreeably to my calculation, we were in sight of my camp on the opposite bank of Orange-River.

Having fired our guns to inform our people of our arrival, they all passed the river by swimming, and came to me. Swanepoel alone remained in the camp, greatly perplexed about the litter, and the two oxen yoked together without any wheel-carriage, which he saw with me. The increasing darkness, however, prevented me from venturing to pass the river on the raft; and I spent the night where I was, not returning to the camp till the next day.

The first of my employments, on my arrival, was to put my giraffe in water to soften it, and to clean it from the ashes with which it was incrusted. I then scraped it, removed all the fleshy fibres, and did, in short, what a tanner would have done.

To reduce it to a proper state for keeping, all that was now necessary was to impregnate it with some styptic or astringent juice; and for

this purpose, having no oak-bark, I employed a strong lixivium of ashes and tobacco, in which were dissolved a little alum, four ounces of camphor, and a pound of soap.

As I could not apply my lixivium effectually, unless the skin were in a horizontal situation, I erected for this purpose a strong frame of cross bars in form of a scaffold, with considerable interstices, resting on forked sticks. The skin was stretched over this, with the hair uppermost; and, in this position, the lixivium was poured over it, while underneath it was wetted with pieces of linen dipped in the liquor. After this, I covered it with mats, to prevent the rays of the sun from changing the colours of the hair; and in that state I let it dry. It will hereafter be seen, that it remained thus a long time.

My return was a day of rejoicing to my Hottentots; but the motive of their gladness was to me a cause of vexation. It taught me the true character of these indolent lazy Hottentots of the colony, of whom I had hitherto entertained too favourable an opinion, and who, though perhaps they may be serviceable as long as you remain within the colony, be-  
come



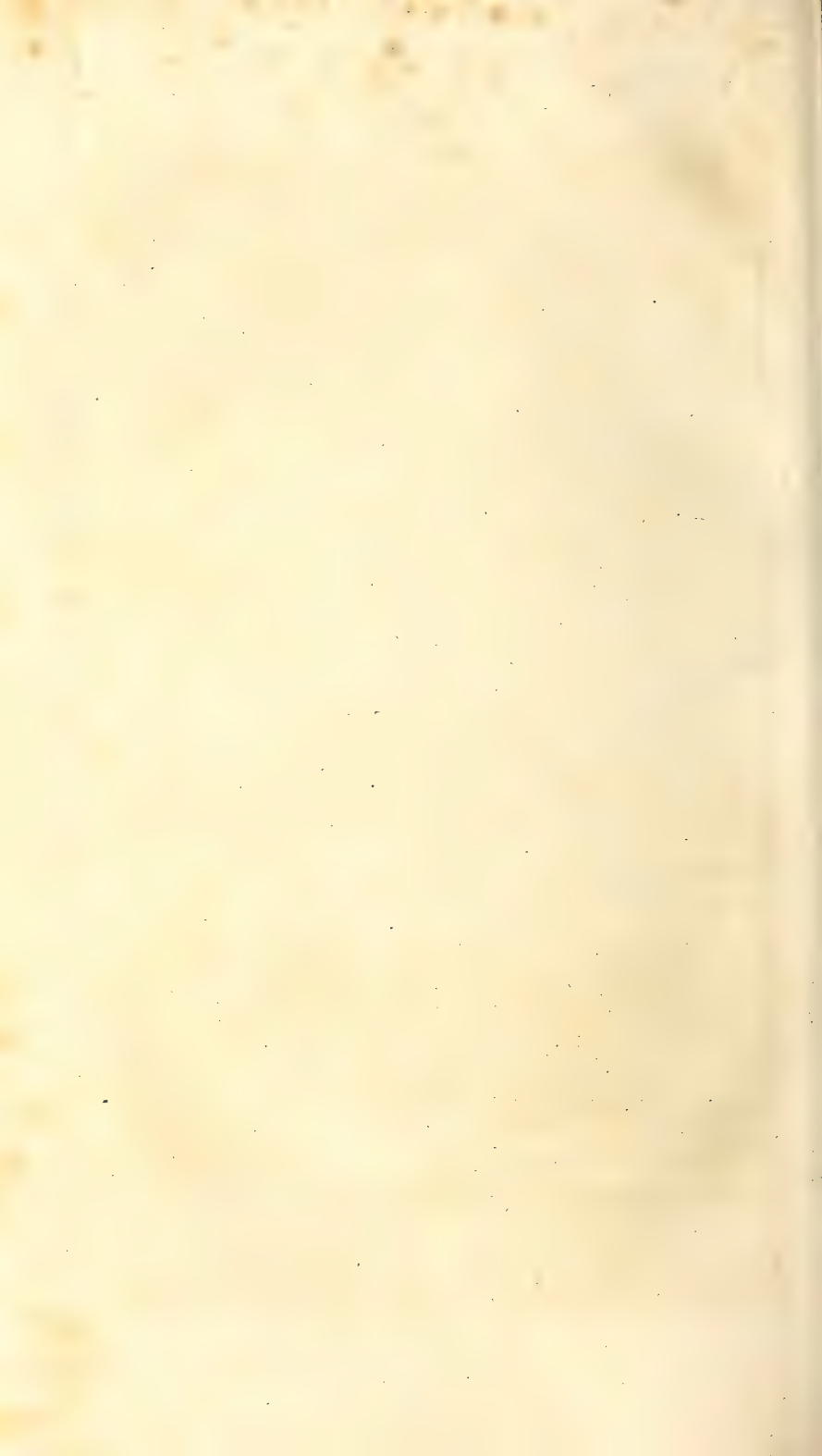
RIVER OF ORANGE RI







CAMP OF THE GIRAFFE ON THE BORDER OF ORANGE RIVER.



come a troublesome burden when they are led into distant countries, where dangers arise at every step.

They had flattered themselves, that, as I could not proceed farther with my waggons, I should be obliged to return to the Cape, and leave them to their native indolence, with gain acquired without fatigue. My return, however, had no share in my thoughts; and, had it even been my inclination, it was far from being in my power. During the six-and-twenty days I had been absent, not only had I lost all my oxen except eleven, but these eleven were in such an exhausted state, that I had little hope of their recovery. I declared aloud, therefore, that I had returned to my camp only to get rid of my giraffe, and intended to depart again without delay, to visit either the Greater Nimiquas, or some other neighbouring people, that I might purchase cattle to draw my carriages.

To this impatience of return among my people was added another subject of apprehension, which was still more alarming. On my arrival at the camp, I had been accosted by an unknown person, who was come, he said,



only to see me and pay me a visit. His face proclaimed him fourscore; but his features were so strongly marked with villany, that it was not necessary to know his name to conceive of him the opinion he deserved. It was Matthew Moodel, the intimate friend of Bernfry, and one of those fugitives proscribed by the colony and by the planters, for the atrocity of their conduct, and the blackness of their crimes.

I could not avoid being uneasy at the meeting of these two men; which I considered as a misfortune a thousand times worse for me than the neighbourhood of lions, tigers, or all the monsters of Africa. Was it not possible, after all, that two such men had leagued together, to come and assassinate me, and seize my arms and ammunition? Such a scheme was worthy of them; and the distance of the deserts they inhabited would secure them from punishment.

What would have been my fears, had I then known, what I did not learn till afterwards, that such was in reality their trade; and that they were both connected with the Boshmen, to whom they gave information that enabled



them to come and plunder the Nimiquas, and then shared their booty?

Swanepoel, it is true, had informed me, that, during my absence, some Boshmen had come to the camp, under the pretence of asking him for tobacco. This mode of acting the spy ought of itself to have opened my eyes. But though the two villains appeared to me capable of any crime, whether it were thoughtlessness or confidence in my little army, it never came into my head to suspect them of this: and, as to the visit of the Boshmen, it appeared to me to have little alarming in it: for these robbers never attack unless they are sure of their aim; and there is nothing in the world they dread so much as fire-arms.

I had found many other strange faces, on my arrival, beside Moodel's. They were women whom my Hottentots had invited, and whom I was obliged to feed, for the pleasure of these gentlemen. Each had his lass; or, rather, there were enough to enable them to change when they thought proper: and many, following the example of Bernfry, had even as many as three. This disorderliness had naturally produced more. An extreme neglect of

duty ensued. Nothing was attended to properly; and the want of subordination was become so general, that, to cut the evil to the quick, I set about pronouncing as many divorces as there had been marriages, and sending away all these Hottentot ladies without exception.

Such a severe injunction could not fail to be displeasing to idle fellows, who had no employ but to divert themselves, and to whom I announced the fatigues of a new journey. Most of them murmured loudly; and complained, that, after I had been three months leading them through horrible countries, I intended to conduct them to others perhaps still more desolate and dangerous. The sight of the women whom they were to quit added to their discontent; till at length it rose to such a height, that Klaas entered my tent to inform me, that, if I did not prevent an insurrection by revoking my order, I should run the hazard of finding myself alone the next day with him and Swanepoel, as all the rest were already preparing to depart with their mistresses.

In any other situation, such an account would have led me to serious reflections: in the present,  
sent,

sent, it only irritated me. I saw in my people nothing but rebellious servants; and my mind was so heated with their murmurs, that, rushing hastily out of my tent, I renewed the order for the departure of the women aloud: adding, that they who preferred them to me might depart with them, as I was no longer desirous of their service, and should know where to find and how to punish them when I thought proper.

The firm tone with which I uttered my threat having suppressed their murmurs, and produced a deep silence, I endeavoured to avail myself of this sudden impression, by trying my authority in issuing an order of a different kind. Two of my goats and a sheep had strayed away the evening before; and the people whom Swanepoel had sent in search of them had returned without finding them. I ordered them to be sought for anew: but no one preparing to obey the injunction, I issued a particular command for the purpose to the person nearest me. This was a Hottentot, named Adam, who had accompanied me in my former journey, and who had continued in my service, both be-

fore and after the commencement of my second, as a keeper of my oxen.

Adam, at the time, was sitting on his bundle, and ready to depart. Without rising, he impertinently answered, that, being no more a conjuror than his comrades, and possessing no better than they the talent of finding what was lost, I might have spared myself the trouble of sending him after the animals, as he should not go. This resistance to my orders inflamed me with rage. I gave him a kick on the stomach, which laid him on the ground; and, cocking one of the pistols that hung at my belt, I bade him take to his heels, or I would blow out his brains.

He snatched up his packet, and ran off with all speed: but he had scarcely gone thirty steps, and out of reach of my pistol, when he stopped short and uttered some expressions, which, indeed, I could not understand; though, to judge from his attitude and gestures, they were threats. I then took my fufee, and sent after him both balls in succession; not with an intention to hit him, but to intimidate those who might be inclined to follow his example and  
rebel.



rebel. Terror instantly diffused itself throughout my whole camp; and the culprit fled as fast as he was able, running as though the wind had driven him along, so that he was out of sight in an instant.

This action hastened the moment of a revolution, which might become general; and I had immediately after reason to apprehend this, when I saw them all set off their own way, and disperse themselves over the country. However, I was mistaken. The example of severity they had witnessed intimidated them. Klaas assured me, that they were going in search of the lost animals: and, in fact, when they returned in the evening without having found them, he came to inform me, that they were all very uneasy about the consequences of my anger, and feared I should ascribe the inefficacy of their search to negligence and ill-will.

Their return but little affected me; as I should have seen them depart with the greatest calmness. Certain that Klaas and Swanepoel would never desert me, certain of having made myself friends among the savages I had just visited, I was persuaded I could continue my  
journey,

journey, and should find, either among the Nimiquas or in the Caminouqua horde, new companions, who would take pleasure in entering into my service, or at least assist me in finding an escort from horde to horde.

These new companions would have been unquestionably more useful and less expensive than the indolent race of Hottentots ; who, as I have already said, are good only in the colony, and have no notion of being serviceable any longer than while they have plenty of tobacco, brandy, and fat. In my rage, I had even given them leave to quit me ; and I would have sent them off as they deserved, without allowing them to return, had I been able to foresee that, on continuing my journey, I should meet with a warlike, indefatigable, active, industrious, sober nation, composed of men fit to assist me in the bold enterprise I had formed, and enable me to surmount the difficulties of every kind that awaited me.

I became acquainted with this privileged race of beings, worthy of contributing to the success of an African journey, too late for my advantage. Fortune, it is true, has appeared  
some-

sometimes to favour my audacity : but it has much more frequently thwarted me ; and the erroneous calculations of a first attempt assisted it but too well, in destroying the hopes which from time to time it seemed to offer, like gleams of light breaking through clouds heaped on clouds.

The rising of my people was, like all other popular commotions, violent, yet short ; and night completely calmed it. When I awoke, I found every one quiet and submissive ; and my confidant informed me, that they intended to come and ask my pardon for what had passed, and entreat me not to send away the women.

Experience had long before taught me the danger of attacking certain abuses, of which this was one, too abruptly. I had committed a fault in not opposing it at the outset, when Klaas Baster and some of his comrades had borrowed the wives of Bernfry. At that time, it would have been easy for me to have stopped an evil, of which a few only were guilty : but now that all were implicated in it, I thought it more prudent to tolerate it, and accordingly consented that the women should remain. I was careful, however, to add this condition :

that, if any one failed the least in the most scrupulous performance of his duty, I would instantly turn that man's mistress away.

My reflections on the events that had occurred rendering me melancholy, I took a walk on the banks of the river to dissipate them; and near the camp I found, what had been fought at a distance around, my three strayed animals. The sheep had been devoured by a tiger, and a few fragments of it only remained. Following the traces of this beast of prey, I perceived, a little farther on, a bush, the branches of which were shaken within, as if some animal were lurking in it. I suspected the movement was occasioned by the tiger, and that he lay concealed there to return at night and finish his prey.

In consequence of this idea, I loaded my fusée with two balls; and, discharging one barrel through the bush, I advanced with caution, having the lock of the other cocked. But what was my sorrow to find, instead of a tiger, one of my goats mortally wounded, and yielding its last breath!

Happily this vexatious mistake was instantly compensated by a pleasing discovery. On my



separating the branches of the bush to drag out the wounded goat, the other came forth with two kids, which she had yeaned the preceding day. But for me, they would all three have been devoured that night; and this idea rendered them the more dear to me. Taking one of the kids under each arm, and followed by the bleating mother, I conveyed them to the camp, that they might be added to my herd.

In the evening, those of my Hottentots who had been on duty keeping the cattle in the day, being returned, after having been relieved for the night, informed me, that Adam, when he ran away, had taken refuge in their huts; and that he was extremely sorry for his folly; but, not daring to come near the camp or demand forgiveness, because he was persuaded I intended to kill him, he had entreated them to request Klaas to go to him.

This desire of speaking to a man who completely enjoyed, as he merited, my confidence, showed that the fugitive sought to obtain a mediator with me. However, for the sake of an example, I was determined not to grant him his pardon very soon or very easily; and,  
while

while I permitted Klaas to go and see him the next day, I gave him his lesson respecting what he had to say, both on his visit and afterwards when he came back.

All my people awaited his return with impatience. As soon as he appeared, they ran to meet him, to request him to use his best interest with me in favour of their comrade ; and, when he entered my tent, they drew near to hear what I should say. Klaas talked a long time of Adam's penitence. He assured me he had left him in the utmost dejection and in tears ; and at last added, " But, master, you  
" will overlook his fault ; and, as you are going  
" to set out, I have given him hopes that you  
" will pardon him on my intercession, and  
" take him with you on your journey."

My answer was previously concerted with Klaas. I assumed a haughty tone, which the presence of those who were listening rendered necessary, and, blaming Klaas for having exceeded his authority in promising what I would not grant, added : " No : Adam shall accom-  
" pany me no longer : he has failed of his  
" duty in every point : I will hear no more of  
" him : I even declare, that, if any one of those  
" whom

“ whom I esteem sufficiently to permit them  
“ to attend me, should ever take upon him to  
“ mention his name, I will immediately send  
“ him away without mercy, in whatever place  
“ we may be situated. However, I will not  
“ abandon the wretch in the midst of a desert :  
“ let him come back, therefore, to my camp ;  
“ where, till my return, I permit him to remain  
“ with Swanepoel.”

This speech had all the effect I intended on those by whom it was heard. The very men who the day before were all ready to quit me, because I talked of a new journey, had now no higher ambition than that of accompanying me in it. Every one begged leave to attend me : it was who should obtain the preference : and this was solicited with earnestness as a favour.

That the fervour of this zeal might not abate, I appointed the next day but one, which was the fourteenth of December, for my departure. At the same time, to give Klaas a certain degree of consequence among his comrades, and reward him for the uniform fidelity he had always shown to me, I left him to make the selection ; and announced, that I  
would

would allow those to accompany me, for whom he would take upon him to be answerable.

Not to be troubled with too many people, however, I resolved to take but the half of my troop, thinking the other half would be sufficient to guard my camp during my absence.

Though Bernfry ought to have inspired me with distrust, on account of the many pretty Boshmen's daughters that were among the number of his wives, I did not then suspect, as I have already said, his connection with those banditti. I knew not, that, being in alliance with them, he gave them information of what booty they might take, and of course might acquaint them with my departure. But hitherto they had made no attempts; and, provided as we were with fire-arms, I did not fear them. Besides, Bernfry requested to bear me company on my second excursion as he had done on the first; and the same motive which determined me to assent before prevented me now from refusing.

I had in my camp a certain number of Caminouquas, who had followed me with their wives from friendship. When these worthy  
people



people knew that I was going on a new expedition, they all, as well as their wives, offered to accompany me, requesting no pay but a ration of tobacco every month; and I accepted their offer with joy.

To say the truth, the company of colonial Hottentots I had in my service appeared to me, from that period, a burden rather than an assistance. Since their rebellion, I was altered with respect to them, and no longer saw them with the same eyes. In my little excursion, I had just experienced how easy it was to make friends among the savages; and I particularly felt how advantageous it would be to a traveller, in visiting a country with a view to become acquainted with it, to take no other companions or guides than a constant succession of its own inhabitants.

My Caminouquas had nine oxen, which I hired. I purchased seven others; and began immediately to pack up, in sheep-skin bags, such goods and provision as I meant to take with me.

That my effects might be kept in order, and I might be able to find them on my journey, without difficulty or creating confusion,

whenever I had occasion for them, I ticketed each of the bundles that were to compose the load of one ox, with a different colour. Each ox had his own appropriate burden, which was not to be changed during the journey; and he had also his particular people attached to him exclusively. All this being arranged, I made out a little inventory, on which were written the name of each ox, those of his conductors, and the contents of his load; so that, if I wanted any particular article, I had only to cast my eye over my inventory, and call such or such a man, or ask for such an ox.

Only seven of the sixteen, however, were destined for my own immediate service. These carried, beside my two tents, every thing that belonged to myself; as ammunition for hunting, articles of trade, culinary utensils, articles of dress, tobacco and brandy for particular occasions.

Seven others were laden with mats, skins, arms, utensils for the troop, and hoops for the construction of their huts. The two remaining were reserved in case of accident or disease, and for the assistance of such women as might be tired on the march.

For

For the honour of the women I ought not to omit, that there was not one of them who had recourse to this mode of conveyance; but, constantly singing, dancing, and playing their gambols, they kept the caravan in continual gaiety, and in times of suffering and distress gave lessons of courage to the men.

It must be confessed, that, as they travelled with such conveniences and resources as they had never before known, the march was to them a party of pleasure, and a sort of festival. Their curiosity, too, was gratified in traversing a new country, where they wanted for nothing.

There were eleven of these, women or girls, without reckoning Rachel, the wife of Klaas, whom I took with me to look after a little herd of three cows, six goats, and sixteen sheep, which were to follow me in case of want. I had, besides, Kees, four dogs, and three horses (for Bernfry added his to my two); making in all sixty persons and forty-seven animals. Such was my caravan; which departed in good condition, but did not so return. Thus it is men march to battle.

In the afternoon of the day appointed for

our departure, I began by making the oxen file off with their conductors. These all passed the river by swimming ; and, in the mean time, the baggage was conveyed over on the raft. When all had arrived on the opposite bank, the goods were landed ; and the conductors, knowing by the colour of the tickets what bags were to be committed to their charge, arranged them in separate heaps, and waited for the order to load.

For my part, I had resolved not to set off till the next morning, and to spend another night in my camp, that I might regulate every thing, and give Swanepoel my final instructions. With half of my people, I left him for his guard and protection half of my arms. I also left Klaas Baster at the camp, who might be of service to me during my absence, by going to the Nimiqua hordes and purchasing for me draught oxen, while I was endeavouring to procure others in the countries I should visit.

Supposing I should find any, what was I to do ? Or how was I to act ? Destitute of plan, and even in the impossibility of forming one, since the country I was to pass through was  
totally



totally unknown to me, I was assailed by a thousand confused and contradictory ideas, which disturbed me during the whole night.

My first project, it is true, had been to traverse Africa from one extremity to the other. All my preparations at my departure from the Cape, and every step, every precaution I had taken since, had tended solely to this end; and still it was my single purpose, notwithstanding the obstacles that were continually arising from the adverse seasons.

Hitherto my mind had stood up firmly against every thing that opposed my progress; and I felt in my breast the courage still to brave whatever might oppose it anew. But I conceived myself stopped by an insuperable difficulty, that of taking my waggons with me: and what was yet more afflicting, if I left my waggons on the banks of Orange-River, I abandoned at the same time the birds, quadrupeds, and insects, which I had procured since I left the Cape, and that giraffe, the acquisition of which had occasioned me so much joy: a valuable and esteemed collection, purchased by great fatigue, exertion, and danger. Thus I was always led to reflect, that the tra-

versing Africa, if it be possible, admits only of hasty observations; and that to attempt to be continually on the march, and continually collecting at the same time, is a mad project, for which armies of oxen, with waggons at their heels, would be insufficient. Nevertheless, all these ideas were combined in my head.

Involved in this inextricable maze of perplexities, the wisest step I could take was to finish the preparatory excursion I had begun, and to leave my ultimate resolution on the subject to be determined by the circumstances that awaited me. Till this resolution was fixed, I purposed to employ myself on my road in augmenting my collections of natural history, make as many friends as possible in my way, and penetrate, if I could, towards the east, as far as that part of the centre of Africa which is scarcely more than three hundred and forty leagues wide; there to discover some more favourable path than that in which I was, and secure myself, if some unforeseen accident should prevent my advancing farther, at least the resource of recommencing my journey under happier auspices, and with hopes better founded. This was the most rational step

I could take : it will hereafter appear, whether, even in this, my desires were founded on possibilities.

Conformably to this provisional plan, I told Swanepoel to wait for me on the Orange-River four or five months. When this term was expired, I allowed him, if he could procure any oxen, to return to mount Namero, and wait for me at Van der Westhuyfen's some time longer : after which he was to return to the Cape. I delivered to him my notes, with instructions to transmit them to my family, if he heard no more of me. Finally, after having given him two letters, one for Gordon, the other for Serurier, and consented to his recalling Adam, I embarked on the raft, and joined my caravan.

We were at that period of the year when the days are longest and hottest ; and not one passed without a storm, though we experienced only its inconveniences without its benefits. The clouds passed on towards the lofty mountains at a distance, and seldom let a few drops fall on us. Every where the drought was in general the same.

This slight sprinkling, however, sufficed in some places to make the Boshmen's grass ger-

minate and spring up from the earth. This grass is not perennial: every year it dries even to the root, and is re-produced by seed; but it has so little hold of the ground, that oxen, in feeding on it, pull up the whole plant; and even the wind is sufficient to tear it up by the roots, and carry it away.

That my cattle might have the advantage of this little fresh grass on their road, I made them travel abreast, wherever the ground would permit. In this way, they could all feed alike at the same time, which they could not have done if they had followed one another. Sometimes they occupied a space of half a league from one extremity of the line to the other; and we drew nearer together only when the proximity of the mountains rendered it necessary.

In countries where grass is so thin, this method has great advantages. Besides, by enabling us to cover a greater extent of ground, we were more likely to meet with springs, which otherwise we might have sought in vain. It was thus that, on the first day about noon, after travelling five hours, we discovered a warm spring. Here I halted to rest our oxen, and



in the mean time took an observation of the sun's altitude, by which I found the latitude to be  $27^{\circ} 5'$ . After this we inclined to the west, to reach Lion-River; where we arrived in three hours and a half.

Before I quitted my camp on Orange-River, I had remarked, that the floods were higher and more frequent than they had been on my arrival. Sometimes the water rose six feet, and remained in that state several days. This announced, that the rainy season had begun in the mountains to the north-east, where this river, as well as almost all those on the west, take their rise.

As the same cause must produce the same effect on Lion-River, I had reason to fear, that I should find it troublesome to pass, if I waited much longer. It had already more water than when I crossed it before. Desirous, therefore, of leaving it behind me, I went and encamped on its right bank: after which we proceeded along its course for three days, stopping only to encamp at night, and in the day to give chase to a few giraffes, which we saw occasionally, but which always outstripped us and escaped.

On

On the fourth day we arrived at a spot shadowed by beautiful trees, the verdure of which was so pleasing to the eye, and the appearance so attractive in the midst of the intolerable heat by which we were parched, that I resolved to spend there not only the night, but also the following day. Around me were green pastures and limpid water; and at a distance I perceived giraffes, antelopes, grouse, and some birds in particular with which I was hitherto unacquainted.

My tents were pitched and wood collected in a moment; thanks to the women, who, after having supported the heat and fatigue of these four days with more fortitude than the men, set about the work without delay. They had taken this business exclusively to themselves, and would not suffer the men to be concerned in it.

It was the same with regard to my household affairs. They contended who should show herself most useful; seeming to fear that I might repent of having taken them with me; and seeking, by preventing my wishes in a thousand ways, to make themselves necessary, and hinder my feeling the slightest regret. It

was

was a matter of rejoicing to them to have some new order from me to execute, or something to do on my account; and these groups of figures in motion or crowded round me, and become so docile since the last commotion of the seraglio, formed an amusing picture.

While they were preparing my supper, I went to take a walk on the bank of the river, and discovered, almost in its bed, a phenomenon, which is so rare in geology, that a naturalist, when he meets with it, observes it with attention. This was a brine-spring, so extremely salt, that it was impossible to drink one drop of it.

I have visited the salt pits of German Lorraine, and those of the county of Nassau, and tasted their waters, but never found any thing equal to this. No doubt, in its subterranean course, it passes over some bed of rock-salt, which it dissolves; and, in consequence of the extreme heat of the climate, it probably takes up a great deal; at least, to judge by its taste, it contains a large portion. I would not venture, however, to affirm, that this salt is the same with that used in our kitchens: nay, from its extreme causticity, I am much inclined to  
doubt

doubt it. But, as I had not in my power the means of analysing it chemically, I could judge of its nature by the taste only: a very uncertain mode, and sometimes the more apt to deceive, because, in comparing a new sensation with old and known ones, it is easy to confound them, and think them the same.

Beside these brine-springs, Africa contains several lakes, of greater or less extent, that are likewise salt or brackish. These being fed by rain-water alone, it is probable they owe their saltness merely to the saline earth washed by this water.

Kolben, as dogmatic as ignorant, will not admit this simple and natural cause. Reasoning after his own way, he announces a perfectly new system on this subject, and of which no one before, as he says, ever thought.

To establish his hypothesis, which indeed is new and will long remain so, he employs the succession of the wet and dry seasons, the north wind, and the south wind, ice, and thunder. With these ingredients, he wants nothing more: a page of his book is the magician's wand. According to him, the conflict of the seasons forms in the air a large quantity



quantity of nitrous and saline particles, with which the atmosphere is loaded; and as the south-east wind blows at that period violently, and agitates the water in the basins, it precipitates them and deposits them there. This Kolben is a very great man in Europe.

I can scarcely forbear laughing, when I see an author seriously advance such explanations; yet this man employs several paragraphs on his. He even treats with a sort of contempt the opinion of those who conceive the saltiness to arise from springs of salt-water, either rising in their basin, or flowing into it from without.

“ Were it so,” adds our natural philosopher,  
“ the quantity of salt formed by these peren-  
“ nial springs would not vary as it does. Be-  
“ sides, the water would be for ever and at  
“ all seasons brackish : whereas it is uniformly  
“ fresh and good, till the commencement of  
“ summer; so that the cattle in the neigh-  
“ bourhood drink no other till that period,  
“ and even some time after. In fine, if these  
“ brine-springs existed, unquestionably the  
“ planters would have discovered at least some  
“ one

“ one of them ; a thing which has never yet  
“ happened.”

I shall not waste my time in combating an opinion, which merits not the honour of being combated. I shall merely allow myself to explain this circumstance of waters alternately fresh and salt.

At the Cape, only two seasons are known : the dry season, which constitutes summer ; and the rainy season, which is called winter. If, during the latter, the waters in question become drinkable, it is because they are freshened by the quantity of rain-water continually pouring into them. In the summer, on the contrary, great part of them is evaporated by the extreme heat ; and the little that remains, being concentrated, resumes all its saltness.

I know not whether the planters were acquainted with any salt-springs in Kolben's time : but they might have presumed, that several must necessarily exist in a country where there were so many brackish ones. I, who did not look for them, found two within the space of eight-and-forty hours : for, the day before I discovered this in the bed of  
Lion-

Lion-River, I had encamped near another, less pungent, it is true, but yet of the same nature.

I shall add here, by the bye, that I have met with several chalybeate waters, and others which appeared to me from the taste either cupreous or vitriolic: and, if researches of this kind had possessed any attractions for me, I should probably have found something very different still; for I was in the parts where discoveries were really to be made, and Kolben, as I have said before, never quitted those where every thing had already been discovered.

All the country that borders on the right bank of Lion-River is a quartzose rock, which in certain places includes iron, copper, and even crystals of a very fine water; and in others, approaching to the nature of granite, it contains white and yellow micas.

During these four days, I had amused myself on the road with culling these different productions, which I carefully added to my collection. My Hottentots, who had seen me little attentive to any thing but subjects of the animal kingdom, were surpris'd at the care I  
took

took of these. They imagined I was gathering a treasure; and, in consequence, they also turned up the earth after my example, and began to collect with an ardour at which I laughed heartily. They displayed the most eagerness for the two micas, which, deceived by the colour, they believed to be silver and gold; and their fancies already enjoyed the fortune they imagined they should make on their return to the Cape.

At day-break, I set off with Klaas for the purpose of procuring some new birds; while, at the same time, my hunters and some of the Caminouquas who attended me dispersed themselves different ways, in quest of some of the larger beasts of chase for the supply of our kitchen. I was fortunate enough to meet with two birds, a male and female, of the same genus with that I had seen in the forests of Bruintjes-hoogte, which my people called *uytlacher* (the mock-bird). These were a different species of the same genus, and were a real gratification to me.

I saw barbets also, and some other species of birds, which I had met with to the eastward, though not in such numbers as here.

The



The most abundant were the republicans, and the little parrots which I had occasion to mention at the same time. The former were in numerous flocks.

It appears, that when they take up their abode in the plains, and construct their enormous nests on the aloes, which are liable to be blown down by stormy winds, it is for want of a better asylum: for they prefer the backs of mountains, defiles, and similar situations, which are well sheltered. There they multiply infinitely, and their nests are found every instant. But, wherever they fix themselves, the little parrots follow them, to seize on their edifices. They drive them out by open force; and they expel them with such vigour, that I have often seen a nest change its proprietors, and be filled by the new guests in less than two hours.

In the afternoon, one party of my hunters returned with two gnoux and several springbock antelopes, which they had killed. They had even been so successful, that they were obliged to send to the camp for two oxen to carry their game. Their comrades, and the Caminouquas who accompanied them, did not

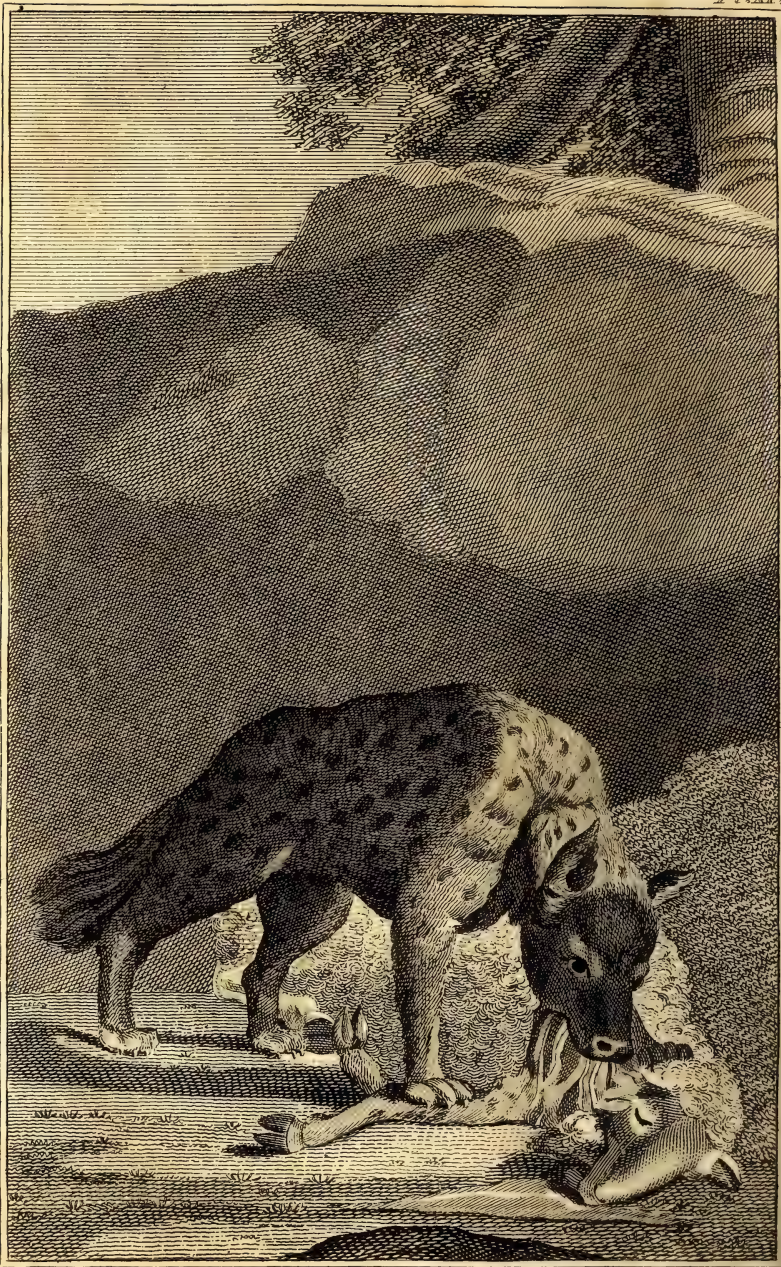
return till night. They came with empty hands, but they brought me some pleasing news.

While beating about the country, they met with some Greater Nimiquas, whose horde was within four leagues of my camp; and, certain that they should oblige me by procuring me an opportunity of seeing it, they repaired thither, to ask the consent of the chief, and give him notice of my visit. He assured them it would give him great pleasure to see me, and sent six of his people to give me an invitation. I received and entertained his messengers in a friendly manner, and said, in answer to their solicitations, that the next morning at break of day I would accompany them to their horde.

The scent of our game, and the fumes of our cookery, had been smelted by the hyænas and jackals at some distance. These animals roamed round my camp all the night. The hyænas particularly, either more bold or more pressed by hunger, approached so near, that we could observe their motions by the light of our fires; and I killed one the moment he fell upon one of our sheep. This animal was of the very







SPOTTED WOLF.



same species with those which we had killed at the river Gamatoos. The planters call it the spotted wolf. It is of the size of the wolf of Europe; and its hair is of a deep fallow colour, interspersed with dark-brown spots. I shall here insert a plate of the animal, of which I shall speak more at length in my description of the quadrupeds of Africa. In vain did we endeavour to drive away the rest with our guns: the howlings, extorted by pain from that I had shot, seemed to animate them to the attack, and they became but the more eager for their prey: they quitted one place only to return at another. Our cattle, which perceived them as well as we, and heard their cries, were in violent agitation, and expressed great fear. In short, for their defence and our own security, we were obliged to be under arms all night.

Beside these hyænas and the jackals, which it was easy to distinguish by their voice, I remarked the cry of some other animal. My people distinguished it by the name of the *earth-wolf*. I do not know it; and I never saw any thing of it but a piece of its skin, which I found in a kraal, as I have said above,

and which I imagined from its appearance to have pertained to an ifatis. Whatever the animal may be, it seems that, having the same instinct in hunting as the other two, it associates with them for the search and attack of prey.

During our firing in the night, and while discharging our guns at a venture, one of our balls had wounded a jackal. We found it the next day on our road, and it afforded a subject of dispute for my troop; each claiming the honour of having killed it, and alleging such whimsically pleasant arguments in support of his pretensions, that they made me laugh ready to burst.

This altercation continued the whole way, and did not cease till we approached the kraal, when I halted to wait for and receive the chief.

He came to meet me attended by some women, and a great part of the men of his horde. They were all stout, near five feet and a half [five feet ten inches English] high, with gentle, but cold and phlegmatic countenances. Every thing about the men indicated the same phlegm: their motions, gestures, and looks, were demure  
and

and frigid; and I soon perceived, on conversing with them, that this sluggish apathy existed in their thoughts and affections as well as in their exterior appearance. When any thing was proposed to them, whether agreeable or not, they never answered immediately, but kept silence for some time, reflected gravely, and spoke with deliberation.

This tranquil and uniform character is very different from that of savages in general. It is by no means that of the Gonaquas and Caffres: and, what is more singular, it is strikingly contrasted by that of the women of the horde, whose lively looks indicate extreme gaiety, and who are great laughers on every occasion. I know not what local cause can have thus saddened the minds of the Greater Nimiquas: since, if their serious melancholy be a physical quality, how happens it that the women, who are their mothers or their daughters, so strangely differ from them?

On the way I perceived vast herds of oxen, which I was told belonged to the horde; and this discovery gave me much pleasure, because it afforded me hopes of being able to purchase without difficulty as many as I wanted. When



I arrived at the kraal, I asked the chief if he could sell me some, or recommend me to such persons as could; promising to pay for them immediately in glass beads, and more especially in tobacco. He kept silence some time, turned towards his people, said two or three words to them, and then, after another pause, calmly and concisely replied to me that they had but few oxen.

This ambiguous answer, which would have very well suited the mouth of a Norman, seemed little conformable to the frankness of the savage character. It was not a refusal in form; yet it disconcerted me. My good friends the Caminouquas, however, who knew their neighbours, whispered me not to be uneasy; assuring me, that, if I concealed the wares I had mentioned, and particularly took care not to be lavish before-hand of my tobacco, I should soon obtain whatever I desired.

The advice appeared to be good, and I could lose nothing by following it. Accordingly, to give the chief a taste for the barter I proposed, I made him a present of some excellent Dutch tobacco: but instead of a quantity, as was my usual custom, I gave him enough only to fill a  
pipe



pipe or two, though his was unreasonably large. He began to smoke it immediately, extolling all the while its goodness, and handing his pipe to the chief persons of his horde in succession, that they might participate in his enjoyment.

Those who were not admitted to this happiness appeared to be much vexed and mortified. They snuffed up with both nostrils the smoke whiffed out by their comrades, and came with a supplicating air presenting to me their empty pipes. Determined, in pursuance of my plan, not to yield, I asked for oxen; they offered me sheep. At length, that I might not appear too eager for the change, and to throw them off their scent, I affected not to think any more on the subject, resolving to have patience, and wait their coming about.

However, as I perceived among the women some who had the appearance of scolding their husbands, and being displeas'd because they did not bargain with me, I thought, if I could get them on my side, I should gain my end more speedily. I gave out, therefore, that, if they would bring milk to my camp, I would give a row of beads a foot long for each bowlful.

This was nothing more than a pretext. I was in no want of milk, as my three cows furnished more than was sufficient for my consumption. The day nearly ended, however, without my obtaining my purpose. For some time, I thought my proposal would have no success: but, towards evening, all the women arrived with their bowls; and my camp abounded with milk, for which I paid with great punctuality. They would gladly have received some of my tobacco instead of beads: but I stood firm; and my constant refusal had so good an effect, that one of them, who had probably more power over her husband than the rest, assured me, that the next day she would bring me two very fine oxen.

There was a ball, according to custom; and the dancing continued all night. The Nimiqua girls are well made, handsome, and very amorous. My men availed themselves of the dance to procure *têtes-à-têtes* with them, and, not having oxen to purchase like me, they proffered their allowances of tobacco, which were accepted for want of better.

As I was chief of the caravan, a white, and possessor of tobacco of a much better quality,  
many

many advances were made me ; and I have no doubt but I might have formed, for a few pipesful only, an alliance with every family in the horde. I was even pressed so closely, as to be obliged to employ some resistance: but, at the same time, I must confess, that my refusals were given in such a way as not to offend; and they, who in consequence of their advances had been exposed to them, having soon found other arrangements to make, did not show me the less friendship. For my own part, though, from prudential motives, I had imposed on myself certain laws which I would not infringe, I occasionally indulged in jocularity of speech. Bernfry had taught me to say in the Nimiqua language, *neuyces neuyp matee* ; and every time I repeated this phrase to the young girls, they burst out in a laugh.

I must here add, that the girls alone appeared to me thus free; while the married women on the contrary were modest and reserved. This is a characteristic difference, which distinguishes the Greater Nimiquas from the Hottentot people in general; as likewise does the low cringeing air they assume when they have any thing to ask.



The next morning, the woman who had promised me two oxen brought me three. To induce the rest to follow her example, I paid her handsomely, and gave her three bracelets of brass wire, three girdles of beads, a portion of tobacco, a knife, and a steel with a copper tinderbox full of tinder.

My people cried out greatly on my prodigality. To listen to them, I was bargaining like a complete dupe: but I had my reasons for acting thus; and the woman herself understood them so well, that, before she went away, she asked me to give her a glass of brandy into the bargain. Every thing here below is relative. She departed in the belief, that she had taken me in: and I congratulated myself on obtaining from her three fine oxen, each of which cost me about two-and-twenty pence halfpenny.

The treasure this woman had obtained was no sooner known in the horde, than all were eager to deal with me. Before night I had eleven oxen, and a most charming black bull. I did not purchase this bull for myself, but for my worthy friend Slaber. He had often requested me, if I went among the Nimiquas, to  
procure



procure for him one of these animals, which are highly esteemed by the planters for their strength and beauty. It is true, this cost me as much as four oxen : yet had more been demanded, I would have given it with pleasure for my respectable and affectionate friend.

I was apprehensive, that the cattle I had purchased might return to the herd, and that, mixing with the rest, I might lose them. To obviate this, and be able to know them again, I marked them on the thigh with a hot iron. On the other hand, it would give me some trouble to take them with me ; and I would therefore gladly have sent them immediately to Swanepoel, without waiting till I returned to my camp.

The chief of the horde, it is true, offered to send them thither by some of his people, for whose fidelity he would be answerable. But this offer might be a snare, and a certain mode of regaining what I had purchased. However, my Caminouquas having assured me, that I had nothing to fear, and that a bargain made was sacred among all the hordes, I accepted his offer ; and, after having directed the drivers what road to take, and paid them before-hand,

I saw

I saw them set off: while I, on my part, also resumed my journey, travelling north by east.

Before the chief left me, he caused a fat sheep to be brought, which in his frigid manner he requested me to accept, assuring me that it was a free gift. I did not refuse it; though it was an useless present to me, and though I was convinced, that his liberality was not so disinterested as he pretended. Accordingly, he refused nothing that I offered him in return.

At some distance from the horde, I found a reservoir of saline water, in which were many lumps of salt crystallized by the heat. These I carefully collected, as an addition which nature had made to my store.

Two different courses here offered themselves to me, and I was perplexed which to choose. Due west was a dry plain, covered with mimosas and ebony trees, and bounded by a chain of mountains at the distance of five or six leagues. Toward the east also was a plain, more open, it is true; but at a distance I perceived some large trees, which appeared to skirt a river. The natives assured me it was  
Lion-

Lion-River, which I should fall in with again.

The necessity of a watering place for my people and cattle made me turn to that side; but I was deceived in my expectation. The river had no water; and we were obliged to pass a night without any. To add to our vexation, the place was full of pintadoes; birds of ill omen, which always indicate by their presence a wretched country. Their cries prevented us from closing our eyes. The place where we passed the night I called *Pintado Camp*; and, as soon as day broke, I hastened to quit it, in hopes of finding a better.

That day fortune favoured us; for, after travelling north-east three hours, we found a spring of excellent water, to which I gave the name of *Tortoise Fountain*, because I found near its bed a species of tortoise that I had never seen before. It weighed upwards of twelve pounds, and contained a considerable quantity of eggs of all sizes, among which was a score of yellow ones as large as those of a hen. I had it broiled on the coals; and its white flesh, which was as tender as that of a chicken, afforded me an excellent supper.

The



The pintadoes continued to stun us with their noisy cackling; but at the same time we had many species of beautiful birds; that which Buffon describes under the name of *grenadin* of the coast of Africa, and particularly the lovely bee-eaters, which I have elsewhere mentioned.

My hunters too brought me a very curious animal, which I had not yet been able to procure: this was the great jerboa of the Cape. It is as large as our largest hares: its colour is reddish and dusky, its tail very long, and terminating, like that of the ermine, in a tuft of black hair. The planters call it *springhaas* (leaping hare), because its hind legs, being out of all proportion longer than those before, enable it to take prodigious leaps. Its flesh is excellent food. This singular quadruped, though abounding in certain cantons of Africa, is, notwithstanding, very difficult to find; because, during the day, it retires into deep holes, which it forms in the earth, and comes out only at sunset to feed on the grass, which is its chief aliment.

Bernfry, for his part, had the good fortune to kill a male giraffe. It was fifteen feet and



an inch [about sixteen feet and an inch English measure] high; and I should have been glad to have had its skin as well as that of the other: but being at a distance from my camp, to which I did not think of returning, at least very shortly, and being in want of every necessary convenience for the purpose of carrying it, what could I do with it? I now felt how great reason I had to rejoice, that the former was safe at my camp by Orange-River. This, being prepared and salted, served to supply my caravan with food for some days.

The next day I directed my course north by west, to reach a periodical stream called the *Draay*, (meandering river). Its bed, where we came up to it, was not deep; and we did not perceive it till just as we were descending into it. A herd of buffaloes happened to be lying in it at the time. We were close to each other; but, on seeing us, they all rose together, and fled with a precipitation, noise, and affright, that I cannot describe; while we, as much surprised as they at the meeting, and by no means prepared for such an adventure, suffered them to flee, without firing a single shot.

Though

Though the Draay was dry, it had a few pools in some of its hollows, and was adorned with beautiful trees. I looked out for a place to encamp, both to rest ourselves, and to shelter us from a violent north wind, which blinded us with clouds of sand, and suffocated us with its scorching heat. At noon Fahrenheit's thermometer stood at 110°, and in the evening at sunset it was at ninety.

Notwithstanding the wind and the heat, I went to try my fortune among the trees on the banks; and indeed I found there a most superb and magnificent eagle, of a new species, both male and female of which I had the happiness to kill with my double-barrelled gun.

I had already seen some of these birds on the banks of Orange-River; but they did not suffer me to approach them.

This eagle I named *griffard*, because its claws are stronger and sharper than those of any other eagle known. Equal in strength to the golden eagle, it has, as a distinguishing characteristic, a sort of crest pendent from the hind part of the head: the leg is covered with a fine down throughout its whole length, and the thighs are destitute of those long feathers

common to rapacious birds: all the fore part of the body is of a perfect white, and the rest of a light brown. I was near three leagues from my camp when I killed these two beautiful birds, and I arrived at it extremely fatigued with carrying them; for, together, they did not weigh much less than thirty pounds.

In the afternoon, while I was employed in skinning and preparing my two eagles, I was informed, that our horses were lost. An aged Caminouqua, not less than sixty, had taken charge of them; but the old man, overpowered by the excessive heat, and still more, perhaps, by the fatigue of a journey beyond his strength, had fallen asleep, and, not being able to find them when he awoke, had gone and secreted himself for fear of being punished.

All that could be done on the occasion was to set out myself on the search, which I did with all my people. Bernafry's horse was gone as well as mine. Instead of following my example, this passionate being, who had hitherto behaved tolerably well, because his choleric temper had had no occasion of being roused, burst out at once in imprecations against the carelessness of the keeper, and swore with



dreadful oaths, that if he met with him he would knock him in the head.

It so happened, that, in the course of the search, he found him; and without pity for his age, without compassion for the sorrow he expressed for a very pardonable fault, he actually knocked him down at his feet, and began beating him with fury. This violence was so much the more blameable, because at that moment the horses were just found, and my Hottentots bringing them back.

Happily for the poor fellow, I was not far off. On hearing his cries I ran up, and found him covered with blood. This sight, I confess, put me almost beside myself. Seized with indignation, I dragged the blood-thirsty wretch from his victim; and, pushing him to a distance with all my strength, I threatened him with my vengeance if he dared approach the old man again. "Learn," added I, "that all  
" who compose my camp are in my pay and  
" my service; that you have no authority over  
" them; and that to strike them, therefore, is  
" to insult me."

This speech completed his rage. He foamed with fury; and, asking whether I were come  
into



into the country to support the savages against the whites, threatened to quit me. I took him at his word; and even desired him to do so in a tone which showed I insisted upon it: and, as there were in my camp a few men and women of his horde who had attended him, I ordered these also to remove immediately. They went and joined him, while I led the old Caminouqua to my tent, to dress his wounds and take care of him. I saw the monster withdraw with his people to the distance of four or five hundred paces from us, and stop there to pass the night.

The propinquity of such a man was an alarming circumstance; and I could not see his apparent resolve to remain so near me without uneasiness. No action that subserves his vengeance comes amiss to a villain. Bernfry took with him a buffaloe's horn full of powder, which I had given him for the chace, and I had reason to apprehend he would make use of it to injure us. My people, though delighted at being rid of him, and applauding my severity, which they considered as an act of kindness towards them, feared from him, equally with me, some nocturnal treachery.

They were unanimous for keeping watch all night under arms; and I watched with them.

It may well be imagined, that the whole night was spent in talking of Bernfry. Some related actions of his to which they had been witness; others, such as they had heard told; but all were deeds of the most nefarious description. These stories made me reflect deeply. I reproached myself for the indulgence with which I had before excused and attenuated his faults, and I congratulated myself for having him no longer in our company; beside that he was now useless to me, since I was soon to enter countries into which no white man had ever penetrated, where he was no more known than myself, and where his brutal and hasty temper, his vices and spirit of plunder, might become dangerous to me, by exciting quarrels, and cause us both to be massacred by the natives.

This danger from a strange companion had determined me to refuse many honest persons at the Cape, when they offered to accompany me on my journey. Must it not be imprudent in me, therefore, to take as an associate a man of this stamp, from whom I could expect no-  
thing

thing but vexation, while I had voluntarily refused agreeable companions, from whom, after all, I had only uncertain danger to apprehend?

It is true, I had suffered him to accompany me, merely that I might remove him from my camp, because I thought him less to be dreaded when under my own eyes. But there is no avoiding our destiny. This abominable wretch seemed to have been sent by fate to disconcert my schemes. It will hereafter be seen to what a length he was capable of carrying his vengeance toward me, who neither could nor would put an end to it at a single stroke.

It was to be feared, that the barbarous treatment of the old Caminouqua would alienate the minds of his countrymen, and that they would return home for fear of experiencing the same themselves. Consequently I expected to see them arrive as soon as it was day to announce their departure: but I found with pleasure, that, far from showing any resentment, they came to thank me for having protected and saved the life of one of their brethren, and assure me they were ready to follow me wherever I chose to lead them.



These professions of attachment, in my present situation, gave me great pleasure. I immediately resumed my journey; and, proceeding north-east, to avoid following the windings of the Draay, we fell in with an elbow of the river four leagues on, where we halted in the midst of elephants and buffaloes. I lay in the midst of these animals; for they were so numerous, and so far from wild, that we were surrounded by them on all sides.

In the afternoon we travelled four leagues farther, in a north-west direction, in order to remove from the river altogether; and we encamped near a brook, which, like the river, was dry; though, like the river also, it had collections of water in some of its deeper parts.

These reservoirs in the midst of a parched desert had attracted, I believe, all the monsters of Africa; so that throughout the whole of my travels I have spent few such turbulent nights. On all sides we heard wild beasts, and especially lions, roaring in a terrible manner. Many of the latter, in particular, came roaming round my camp during the night, filling both my cattle and my people with affright: neither



our fires nor our guns could keep them off; they answered, with a sort of rage, the noise of others at a distance, and seemed to call them to the carnage, and to an attack in concert. At length, however, day delivered us from them; and as I had remarked that the noise came chiefly from the north-west, to avoid these animals I changed my course to the north-east.

On quitting a defile, we entered a canton, over which were scattered several herds of cattle; but the keepers collected them together at seeing us, and fled with them as fast as possible. In vain did we endeavour to remove their fears by signs of friendship: involved in clouds of dust raised by their flight, they could not perceive us, and I was apprehensive they would communicate their terror, and spread a general alarm through their kraal.

To prevent this unlucky consequence, I made Klaas mount on horseback, and sent him after them, followed by those Nimiquas who had faithfully accompanied me from the last horde I visited, and who, being their neighbours and speaking the same language, would be able more effectually to allay their fears.

These Nimiqtas assured me, that this step was unnecessary ; but I had laid it down as a principle, that I could never take too many precautions, and would no where make my appearance but as a friend.

Klaas, after having removed the apprehensions of the fugitives by means of the Nimiqtas, went with them to their kraal, to inform the horde of my arrival ; and I soon saw him return surrounded by about fifty savages, all without arms, in token of friendship and confidence. Among them was their chief, whose countenance showed him to be ill, and indeed he made me understand, that he had been long afflicted with a dysentery.

His disease did not prevent him from accepting, with great signs of joy, a glass of brandy, which I presented to him to enliven his spirits. But after he had swallowed two thirds of it, he gave the rest to a woman who accompanied him, and who was one of his wives ; for he had two.

This woman was on the point of lying-in, but she would nevertheless be one of the party to see an extraordinary man. She had long heard talk of me, but could never believe all the

wonders that were related, and now came to be assured of them by her own eyes. She examined me very attentively, viewed me in every direction, and at length bestowed on me many marks of friendship. These I repaid with interest, and made her several presents, with which she was infinitely pleased.

This horde was one of the most numerous of the Nimiqua nation. I traversed the kraal with my whole troop, and went to pitch my camp a mile or two farther on, near a spring, the water of which was excellent, though it had a milky hue which injured a little its transparency. Resolving to stay a few days at this place, in order to study the manners of the nation, I announced my design to my people, to whom it was very agreeable news. In a moment they had erected my tents, constructed their huts, and formed that enclosure of stakes, which, according to our usual custom when I intended to tarry at any place, served to tie our horses and oxen to, and enclose them.

While the men and women were all busied in their several employments, a beautiful bee-eater, of a new species, came and pitched boldly on one of our palisades. This was offering  
him-

himself to my collection, into which I accordingly made him enter, fetching him down with my gun.

Several of the savages of the horde, who, attracted by curiosity, were amusing themselves by looking at the operations of the encampment, were by me at the time. These, most of whom had not the least idea of fire-arms, were greatly surpris'd. The astonishment produced in them by the loud explosion of my gun, and the sudden death of the bird, may easily be imagin'd. Stupefied with admiration, they immediately ran to the kraal, to relate the double prodigy they had witness'd. The report had been heard there; but when it was known, that it was the white man who had produced the thunder, and killed a bird at the same time, almost all the horde ran to the spot where the miracle was performed.

The next day, when these good savages came to visit my camp, I was employ'd in taking an observation of the sun's altitude. Those who the day before had seen me take aim at the bee-eater before it fell, and now saw me direct my quadrant, which they took for another fusee, in the same manner at the sun,  
fixed



fixed their looks attentively, now at the instrument, then at the luminary. Silent and motionless, they waited for the report with impatience, and were much disconcerted when they found my operation terminate without any explosion.

The rest of their companions, who, from the tale they had heard, expected some prodigy, did not well know what to think of it. At length, however, willing to satisfy them in one way or another, and at the same time amuse myself with their simplicity, I caused my perspective glass to be brought, which to them was a third fusée, placed it on the stand which served as a support for my great carbine, and, directing it towards the kraal, desired the person whom I thought the boldest among the Nimiquas to look through it.

Every one knows the history of the young man born blind, who suddenly saw the light, in consequence of the depression of his cataract by Cheselden. It may be remembered, that for some time all the objects he saw were to him so many illusions; that he believed them all close to his eye; that he was mistaken with regard to their figures as well as their distance;

and that he learned to judge of their remoteness only by the sense of feeling and experience.

What Cheselden's blind patient was, the most clear-sighted man may be, with a limited understanding, and if the optical object he perceives be new to him. To suppose that the Nimiqua at my perspective glass could conjecture the mode in which the magic effect of the instrument was produced, would be placing him on a level with us; would be giving him credit for our experience, our knowledge in physics, and a multitude of ideas and reflections that could never enter into his dull and untaught mind.

Let us forget for a moment the lights of our education; let us suppose ourselves like him profoundly ignorant, and without the least conception of a perspective glass; and we may then conceive what his wonder must have been, when he beheld so near him a hut, with two little children playing at its entrance. His astonishment was so great, that he trembled with joy, and all his muscles were contracted at once. Without moving his eye from the glass, he stretched his hand towards  
the

the end of the tube, as if to touch what he saw. Failing in this attempt, he quitted the instrument, and was equally surpris'd not to see them where he suppos'd them to be. He then ask'd his companions whether they were return'd to their former place. In vain did they answer, that they had seen nothing of them: he would not believe them; he pointed with his finger to the place where he had suppos'd the objects to be situated: "There, there they were," said he. The more they persisted in endeavouring to convince him of his mistake, the more he was offended at them, and the scene had nearly terminated in a quarrel.

Among the human beings on whom nature has confer'd a larger or smaller portion of understanding, the Hottentot nation, taking together its different tribes, is, of all others, the least endowed with it. With this slight portion of intelligence did the Nimiqua reason, and persist in ascribing to my glass the power of attracting to it every object, notwithstanding all my endeavours to render my experience sensible to his mind, of which he could comprehend nothing.

His explanation, his enthusiasm, his very  
anger,



anger, however, had excited the curiosity of his comrades: all would come to my glass; and I acceded to their desires, changing the direction of the tube, however, occasionally, without their suspecting it. What they observed ravished them with delight: it was a scene of general enchantment. But while some saw trees brought near, others a mountain, some birds flying, others whole herds of cattle, it may be imagined what confusion must result from their transports, as they disputed concerning the objects they beheld so near them, and how much I was amused by this perplexity.

This comedy continued till the evening: but it was an instructive diversion for me, and showed me what an ascendancy the most unskilful mountebanks were capable of acquiring over nations as ignorant as these when they first discovered them.

All this occasioned me still more visits the next morning, on the part of those who could not come the preceding day. Among them were the chief and his two wives. With one of them I was now an old acquaintance, and accordingly she caressed me greatly. She was accompanied



accompanied by two of her children, a boy and girl, twins, four years of age. She had been delivered of twins once before, which also were alive, and hoped to have twins a third time.

I treated the chief and his wives with a Dutch breakfast, after the manner of the Cape; that is to say, with good tobacco and brandy; after which they requested to see my perspective glass, and admire the wonders they had heard of it. I placed it on the stand as before; but no sooner had they seen one object, than they desired me to bring them another, not doubting but it possessed the virtue of making them come at my call.

After they were gone, the people of the horde came in succession, and made me the same request. The sport was very well for a while; but repetition would render it tiresome, and to avoid this I gave it up. However, for the satisfaction of the curious, I left the glass in its place the whole day, giving one of my Hottentots the charge of it, with orders not to permit it to be moved or touched.

When I entered the Nimiqua country, my design was to investigate every thing that had  
been

been said of it at the Cape. How many tales had I not heard of this nation! what wonderful things concerning its manners, its arts, its treasures, &c. ! The reader knows already what to think of its pretended mines of gold and silver: and the tales of its arts and its laws are on a par with those of its mines.

Kolben is the man who has stamped authority on all these fables. Even I, having no idea respecting these distant and unknown people, gave some credit to the dreams of this writer. In consequence, as I penetrated into the interior of Africa, and visited the Hottentots, I every where sought the traces of that flourishing agriculture, “which they understand incomparably better than the Europeans of the Cape, who frequently apply to them for advice on the subject.” I was desirous of seeing some of those solemn marriage ceremonies, which a priest performs, and which he legitimates by sprinkling the newly united couple with his urine. I wished to visit the public prisons of these people, and be present at the sittings of their tribunals, and the decrees of their sovereign council. Perhaps I had destroyed monsters enough in Africa to aspire to  
the

the honour of being admitted into that order of knighthood; the progress and ceremonials of which the historian has described with no less pomp than minuteness.

Alas! all these splendid chimeras vanished before me. Religion, police, laws, military tactics, orders of battle, treaties of peace, experienced generals, prisoners of war, vanquishers and vanquished, were all romances existing only in the brain of the author, and in the taverns where they had been told him by those who made him their sport.

Thirty or forty years after the publication of his voyage, Abbé de la Caille made some stay at the Cape, and thus was enabled, on some points at least, to pass judgment on the work. He spoke of it as he ought, and as it deserves. Since la Caille, other travellers have given their opinions of Kolben; and the learned now know how far they may rely on the accounts of that traveller.

To listen to him, in all the Hottentot tribes without exception, mothers have the inhuman prejudice of resolving not to have twins, and the abominable custom of destroying one of the two. If the twins consist of two boys,

or two girls, they kill the weaker of the two; if a boy and girl, the girl, he says, is the victim: and he blushes not to avow, that he has witnessed these crimes.

Now I aver, that this charge is the blackest calumny against nature that ever defiled the pen of a writer destitute of modesty. The fight of the two twins of one of the wives of the chief was sufficient to convince me of this. However, as these children might have been an exception to the general law for some particular reason, I resolved to interrogate their father respecting this pretended massacre.

Every morning before I went a-hunting, he came to see me with his two wives, and regale himself with a pipe of tobacco and a *sopje*, or small glass, of brandy. Though his language was different from that of the Hottentots on the western coast, yet, in the two months I had spent in the country, I had learned to understand it a little, and make myself understood.

One day as I was sitting on the grass, near my tent, with him and his two wives, I turned the conversation to the subject of twins, and asked his wife whether, if she should have twins again, she would not destroy one of

6. A. . . . . them?



them? This question appeared to offend her: she kept silence, and fell into a deep musing. But the husband, turning towards me, and reminding me that I had several times asked him similar questions, declared with warmth, that such a sacrifice was impossible.

Thus we see how just are the whites, who, believing Kolben, accuse the Nimiquas of a crime so abominable as to be an outrage against the common mother of all beings.

I will here add, that the Nimiquas not only do not make away with one of their twins when they have them, but preserve and bring up all their children. This duty is so natural, that I could not have made them comprehend an idea repugnant to it.

Beside the grand and revolting charge of which I have just spoken, I had heard, respecting the Greater Nimiquas, another absurd fable, the falsehood of which I equally verified. This was not told me at the Cape, like the preceding one: I had it from Klaas Baster, who, being born near Orange-River, might have known some things respecting these people with certainty.

According to him, the fathers, to shew what

affection they bear their children, feed their eldest in a particular manner, as being of right the first object of paternal care. For this purpose, they put him in a coop, as it were : that is, they shut him up in a trench made under their hut, where, being deprived of motion, he loses little by perspiration, while they feed and cram him in a manner with milk and grease. By degrees the child fattens, and gets as round as a barrel ; and when he is come to such a state as not to be able to walk, but to bend under his own weight, the parents exhibit him to the admiration of the horde ; who, from that period, conceive more or less esteem and consideration for the family, accordingly as the monster has acquired more or less roundity.

Such was the account given me by Klaas Baster ; and though it appeared to me altogether improbable, yet the narrator related so many particulars, of which he pretended to have been an eye-witness ; he had so little interest in imposing upon me ; and the human mind, in uncultivated and ignorant nations, appears sometimes capable of such senseless customs and prejudices, that, notwithstanding  
my

my reluctance, I could not avoid believing it.

Soon, however, I was undeceived. Wherever I asked any questions on the subject, I saw that the people to whom I addressed myself were ready to laugh in my face. Still, as it appeared strange to me, that a man should talk of what he had seen, when he had in reality seen nothing; as it was possible, that the fable might have some foundation, without being true in all its particulars; I was willing to convince myself what could have given rise to it; and, every time I visited a horde, I took care, under different pretences, to examine, one after another, all the huts of the kraal, and to ask which was the eldest child of the family: but I no where saw any thing that indicated either this pretended coop, or this pretended cramming.

It is probable that such a tale may have originated among the planters residing on the Namero, and in the neighbourhood of the country of the Nimiquas; that it was a pleasantry of some wit of the place on the leanness of these people, which indeed is extreme; and that Klaas Baster, the son of a Hottentot

and a planter, having had it instilled into him in his infancy, had finished, like other romancers, by asserting that he had seen what he had only been told. And thus it is, that, throughout the whole of the colony of the Cape, the planters and even the Hottentots will assure you, that sprinkling with urine is practised in the marriage ceremonies of the savage hordes.

I shall here give the figures of two Greater Nimiquas, a man and woman. The former is that of the chief, drawn from the life, in one of his sittings with me to smoke a pipe. I added to it the portrait of one of his wives: but, by some accident, this portrait was lost in my return to Europe.

For want of it, I have substituted another; which is that of a woman who long teased me to draw her picture also; till at last, for my amusement, I consented. I mention this, that my readers may not judge of the features of the Nimiqua woman by those of the female here offered to their view. She was, in reality, one of the most ordinary in the horde; they are, in general, more agreeable in their persons, and when young may be said even to be handsome.





GREATER NIMIQUA MAN.





GREATER NIMIQUA WOMAN.







In size, the Greater Nimiquas are taller than the other Hottentot tribes. They appear even to exceed in height the Gonaquas, though perhaps they do not in reality. Their slender bones, delicate air, thin shape, and small legs, every thing, in short, even to their cloaks, which reach from their shoulders to the ground, contributed to the illusion. On seeing the bodies of these men as slender as the stem of a tree, you would almost suppose them to have passed through the instrument of a wire-drawer.

Less deep in colour than the Caffres, they have at the same time more pleasing features than the other Hottentots, because their nose is less flattened, and their cheeks less prominent. But their cold and unmeaning countenances, their phlegmatic and immoveable air, give them a particular character by which they are distinguished. Every time I looked at them, I fancied I beheld one of those lank, long-visaged, gothic figures placed at the church-doors in certain catholic countries as if to serve as sentinels.

I have already said, that the women do not share this tranquil apathy. Gay, lively, spor-

tive, and loving much to laugh, you would suppose them to be formed of different materials. It is easy enough to conceive, that a man and wife may live peaceably together, notwithstanding such difference of disposition; but it is not easy to understand or explain how such melancholy fathers can beget daughters so gay, or such sprightly women bear sons so dull.

The kross differs not at all in shape from the Hottentot cloak; only, as I have before remarked, it is longer. Many of them use the skins of the hyæna, the jackal, or the isatis, when they are lucky enough to procure a sufficiency to make a kross.

They ornament them with glass beads, and plates of copper, which they obtain from the Hottentots of the colony. I found among them a particular sort of these beads, consisting of little long tubes of different colours, and transparent. These being unknown at the Cape, I wished to know whence the savages procured them. They informed me, that they got them by barter with other neighbouring nations, who had them only at the second-hand; and that they came originally from the blacks who  
dwelt

dwelt on the coast of the Indian sea, to the east of Africa, by whom they were fabricated.

If the beads of which I am speaking were stones or gems coloured by nature, it might be believed that the blacks of the west, after having reduced them into little pieces, might know how to shape and perforate them; as the savages of Guiana do with the amazonian stone. I have found coloured substances in several rocks on the west of Africa, and there may be the same on the east. But these in question are enamels; that is to say, glass, made by fusion and formed by blowing. Now as such an operation requires, not only for the melting, but also for the composition of the colours, considerable skill, implements, chemical knowledge, &c. I think it may be affirmed, without any great rashness, that the negroes of the east were never masters of such an art; and that the enamels they sell to their neighbours probably come from the Portuguese colonies of Mosambique. I have in my cabinet one of these girdles of glass beads, and I can assert that it is neither of French nor Dutch manufacture.

Beside

Beside the kind of decoration which I have just described, the Greater Nimiquas use another, that of daubing their hair with a thick layer of grease, mingled with the powder of different odoriferous woods. Many of them tattoo their faces, arms, and even bodies. But the latter custom is not so prevalent among them, as among other people more to the north. This too may be a native custom, which the same spirit of coquetry that gave rise to it in other nations may have equally prompted the Nimiquas to invent.

As to religion, divine worship, priests, temples, and the idea of an immortal soul, they are all non-entities to them. On these subjects, like all the rest of the savages their neighbours, they have not the slightest notion.

Nature has told them, sufficiently plain, not to do to another what they would not another should do to them; and their little associations, which are a commencement of civilization, lead them in this respect farther than many cultivated people, by enjoining them to do to others as they would be done by.

I know not whether I ought here to relate an absurd custom practised by the Nimiquas,  
which,



which, like many others, arises solely from their ignorance; which is tying up the prepuce when they have a river to cross. This is performed with a thread of gut; and, as their ideas of modesty differ from ours on certain points, they do it before their daughters without any scruple.

When I asked them the reason of this custom, they told me, like true savages, that it was to close an opening by which the water might enter into their bodies. Yet, as a proof how extravagant and even contradictory the prejudices of ignorance are, the women on such occasions neither tie nor stop up any part of the body, whatever access it may appear to offer to the fluid element.

After what I have said of the phlegmatic temper of the Nimiquas, it will be supposed that they are by no means warlike. Yet, like the surrounding nations, they have their assagays and poisoned arrows; and like them can handle these arms with dexterity. They possess also those war-oxen, so formidable in battle, and so favourable to the cowardice or inactivity of the combatants. They have even a peculiar implement of war, which their neighbours  
have

have not. This is a large buckler, of the height of the person who bears it, behind which the Nimiqua can completely conceal himself. But, beside that his natural apathy prevents him from giving or taking offence, he is in reality pusillanimous and cowardly from the coldness of his disposition. To utter only the name of *Houzzouana* before him is sufficient to make him tremble. This name is that of a neighbouring nation, born brave and warlike, and distinguished from other African nations by peculiar features. I shall soon have occasion to speak of them.

Notwithstanding his frigidity, the Nimiqua is not insensible to pleasure. He even seeks with avidity those which, requiring but little exertion, are capable of agitating him and procuring agreeable sensations. Every evening, as soon as the fire was kindled in my camp, thirty or forty persons, men and women, would come and sit with my people in a circle round it. For some time a profound silence was maintained: at length one of them would open his mouth to relate a story, and would then speak without ceasing for hours together.

I was not sufficiently acquainted with the  
language

language to comprehend the whole of the narration; but I understood, that it commonly related to some event to the honour of the nation, and that the unfortunate hero of the tale was almost always a hyæna, a lion, or a Houzouana. Every now and then, the orator was interrupted by the noisy sallies of the women, who shook their very sides with laughter. The men, without taking any share in this extravagant mirth, reasoned gravely, and with an appearance of profound thought, on the circumstances they had just heard. In the midst of this grotesque and incongruous picture, I amused myself with the dignity of the reasoners; while the women, who saw me smile, and knew that I understood nothing of the tale, redoubled their laughter till they were out of breath.

Their musical instruments are the same as those of the other Hottentots; but their dancing is very different, and resembles the temper of the nation. If the countenance have received from nature, features that can express our passions, the body also has its attitudes and movements that paint our temper and feelings. The dance of the Nimiqua is frigid, like himself,  
and

and so devoid of grace and hilarity, that, were it not for the extreme gaiety of the women, it might be called the dance of the dead.

These tortoises, to whom dancing is a fatigue, show little eagerness for any thing but wagers, games of calculation and chance, and all the sedentary amusements which require patience and reflection, of which they are more capable than they are of motion.

One of their favourite games is what they call *the tiger and the lambs*. It is nearly as follows: I say nearly, for I never understood it sufficiently to be able clearly to explain it.

An oblong square is traced on the ground, in which are made a certain number of holes, two or three inches deep, forming a sort of chess-table. The holes are made in ranks, side by side, but the number is not fixed. I have seen them varying from twenty to forty.

To play, they take a certain number of pieces of sheep's-dung, hardened by drying, proportionate to the number of holes, and which represent lambs. Some of the holes also are called lambs, and into these are put balls. The holes that remain empty, are called tigers. Perhaps they represent only different dens of  
the



the same animal, and the retreats or ambuscades which he occupies successively one after the other. The player begins by taking some lambs out of their holes, and putting them into other holes of the tiger. Perhaps this tiger has a regular movement like some of our pieces at chess, and the art of the player consists in avoiding this movement, to save his lambs, and prevent them from being devoured. At least, when it has been necessary to place them elsewhere, I have seen him double his attention; but he sometimes brings them together or separates them in such a confused manner, that, being unable to follow the game, I have been confounded by the movements, and could comprehend nothing farther, till the moment when the stakes were taken up.

There is another game, which, being much more easy, because it is simply a game of chance, is on that account so much the more dangerous; for the Nimiquas, fond of it to distraction, frequently risk, in playing at it, their herds and all they possess. It considerably resembles our huffle-cap. The seed of the mimosa of the country is a sort of bean, which constitutes

stitutes the principal food of the giraffe. They take a certain number of these seeds, engrave some mark on one of their sides, which answers the same purpose to them that the head or the tail of a piece of money does to our gamblers, and, after they have hustled them some time between their two hands, they throw them on the ground, when they have nothing to do but to count whether the marked or unmarked sides uppermost are most numerous.

This game, contrived equally to please the indolent, because it does not fatigue them, and the stupid, because it requires no capacity of thought, wonderfully delighted my Hottentots. They soon gave into it with such ardour, that they did nothing else from morning to night; and many of them, after having lost all they possessed, staked, as their last resource, the allowance of tobacco and brandy that they were to receive the succeeding days.

Nothing now was left for them but to rob me; and I had reason to fear they would do so. To cut off the temptation, I re-established an equality of fortune among them, by restoring to each what he had lost, aware that the sole  
hope

hope of regaining this makes gamblers ; and I had then no need of proclamations to prevent in future such disorder in my camp.

Several Nimiquas had accompanied me from the former horde to this ; they appeared even to take pleasure in being with me ; but, the moment my people were prohibited from playing with them, they no longer found my camp so agreeable, and came to announce to me their departure.

Nevertheless, as they had every reason to be satisfied with my conduct towards them, they expressed, on quitting me, great friendship and attachment ; and, as I had just purchased some oxen for my waggons, they even offered to take them under their care, and deliver them to Swanepoel at my camp on the Orange-River. This offer I accepted. In return, I made them a few presents ; I entrusted them with my cattle, after having marked them ; and they went away satisfied.

Scarcely had they quitted me, when one of my Hottentots came to ask a favour of me. He was desirous of making one of the Nimi-quas of the horde a present of a fine cow. He had already something towards paying for

her, which he had gained at play: but he had not enough, and requested me to advance him, in part of his wages, a little hard-ware, that he might have it in his power to conclude his bargain.

A gift of such consequence implied some great service received. Before I assented to his request, I would know what had given rise to it; and I found that the cow was not a present, but an article of barter. My Hottentot was in love with the daughter of the Nimiqua; and, to obtain her, he had offered him a cow, which the Nimiqua had consented to accept.

In this manner are marriages made in all the African nations; and such was originally the custom throughout the world, before the imagination of poets, and the policy of civilized societies, had substituted in the stead of love a representative, who, under the name of Hymen, claiming alone the right of uniting the sexes, contributes but too often to disturb and deprave their union. Among savages there is no contract, no witness, no ceremony. A man and woman please each other; they live together; and this constitutes them husband and wife. If the woman have parents, she is con-  
sidered



sidered as their property, and of course they must either give or sell her.

At the beginning of my journey, I had no woman with me but the wife of Klaas, who was necessary to look after my linen, my kitchen, and some other branches of my service; and I chose to admit no other into my caravan; persuaded that they would only occasion me trouble, discord, and perplexity.

What had occurred on the banks of the Orange-River, when each of my people had formed to himself a little seraglio, confirmed me in my resolution. But since, that a party of Caminouqua women had entered into my service with their husbands and fathers, I had changed my opinion. The innumerable good offices rendered me by these women, their ever-active readiness to prevent my wishes, and the gaiety they kept up in my camp, rendered their presence highly gratifying to me; and I thence concluded that, if temporary mistresses were calculated to produce nothing but disorder among my people, regular wives might be beneficial, were it only to keep the men near me, and prevent their continually stealing away, to purchase meetings and bargain for favours.

In consequence of these reflections, I could not but be pleased with the request of my Hottentot. I accordingly gave him the goods he desired; and it was not long before he returned with a very pretty Nimiqua girl, about sixteen or seventeen years old.

The next day, the chief of the horde coming to breakfast with me, I asked him whether the marriage was agreeable to him, and he had consented to it. This deference on my part was the act of an European, reasoning according to the prejudices of his country. I forgot at the time, that a savage, though living under a chief, is a free individual, over whose property the chief has no power. Accordingly he made no answer to my question; and his silence convinced me, that he had not understood it.

The procedure of my Hottentot, however, inspired some of his comrades with a wish to do the same. Two of them followed his example; and I ought here to make known, that I had every reason to be satisfied with having permitted these marriages. The three young women accompanied me during the whole of my journey; and they gave me no  
cause

cause of discontent to the very moment when, being returned to the Cape, they quitted me, to follow their husbands to the new horde of which they were about to become a part.

The name of the Nimiquas is much celebrated in the Dutch colonies; but little beside the name is known of them there. With respect to their country, it is supposed, I know not why, to abound in mines of gold and silver. Assuredly I was not led thither by the thirst of wealth. Though it appeared to me the most parched and desolate of all the countries of Africa that I visited, I was not the less desirous of completely traversing it, because I wished to know both the nations by which it was inhabited, and the productions it contained.

The eagerness with which I was observed to seek and catch insects, which are very plentiful in the country, had engaged several persons of the horde in contributing to my collection. A woman, who had made herself of the party, brought me a superb beetle, which I believe is to be found in no cabinet in Europe, at least it is not in any one that I have seen.

While I was examining this beautiful insect



with attention, I felt my face suddenly wetted by a caustic liquor, of a very strong alkaline smell. The sprinkling was accompanied by a sort of explosion, loud enough to be heard at some distance. Unfortunately some of the liquor entered one of my eyes, and occasioned such insupportable pain, that I thought I should have lost the sight of it. I was obliged to keep it covered for several days, and bathe it from time to time with milk. In every part of my face that the alkaline liquor had touched, I felt the pain of a burn; and every where the skin changed to a deep brown, which wore out only by degrees and a long time after. This will not be surprising to many, who already are acquainted with the same property in several insects of the same genus; for instance, in that beautiful golden-green buprestis, which is so common in our kitchen-gardens in Europe: but, as the insect of which I am here speaking is much larger, and inhabits a very hot country, it is natural that the effect produced by it should be more striking; though the liquor which our golden buprestis ejects at its enemy occasions a very sensible smart, and its smell is considerably pungent.

The



The naturalists Dorci and Olivier have given, in their entomology, the figure of this African insect, which I communicated to them. The reader may turn to fig. 5. of their first plate of beetles: but I must remark, that the human face observable on its anteriour corcelet does not exist in nature. I am even astonished that the author permitted this misrepresentation to remain, as undoubtedly it was a dream of the painter or engraver, which ought not to have been suffered. I thought it incumbent on me to point out this fault, that it might not lead the entomologist into an error. The insect itself, however, may be seen in the collection of Dufrene of the cabinet of natural history, to whom I presented it.

Though, in general, all subjects of the animal kingdom, destined to be preserved in cabinets, lose more or less in consequence of drying and shrinking up, I can assert, that the buprestis in question had no more of a human face when alive than after its death: besides, hard insects, such as beetles for example, lose nothing of their shape; while those that are soft change extremely, and require a peculiar

mode of preparation to be preserved in their natural state: there are even many that are never to be had perfect, whatever precautions may be employed. Who will not confess, for instance, that a bird when moulting, or dead of disease, whatever care the ornithologist may bestow on its preparation, cannot possibly be so beautiful as one killed in the vigour of its age and in perfect health?

So it is also with a bird that is sick, or by some obstruction deprived of that unctuous humour secreted by the glands of the rump, which it employs to give a gloss to its plumage. Taken in such a state, it cannot have the lustre or brilliant aspect, which it may and will have if chosen in a different condition. If I take the liberty of introducing these remarks by the bye, it is in order to show how much greater is the difficulty of making a fine collection than is generally imagined.

I had liberally rewarded the Nimiqua from whom I had this buprestis, and I offered a double allowance of tobacco to any one who should bring me another. This offer was a spur to the activity of all the smokers, both male and female. The women particularly,  
 both

both of the horde and of my camp, set themselves to search in every quarter. Yet, notwithstanding the unremitted ardour of their scrutiny, they could not meet with a second buprestis: though they procured me an immense quantity of other insects, and more than two hundred chrysalides of different species, which cost me many pipes of tobacco; for, being desirous of encouraging their researches, I paid with liberality more than the objects were worth.

I intended to take my chrysalides with me, to wait for their metamorphosis on the road. But, notwithstanding all my care, the journey so fatigued them, that more than three fourths died before I returned to the Cape. Such as remained alive appeared very vigorous: but, being obliged to depart for Europe, I was compelled to leave them. I imagine them to have been of the number of those which take up a whole year for their transformation.

It is commonly known in Europe, that caterpillars there are not venomous. At least, such is the assertion of all the naturalists who have written on them. And, though some of the hairy kinds occasion itchings, experience  
has



has shown that no ill consequences follow. But natural history is a vast mine, which, in proportion as it is worked, offers new particulars and interesting discoveries. Cantharides taken internally in powder, or applied externally to the skin in plasters, are found to be a very active stimulant poison: who knows whether other insects may not be discovered, as the study of this branch of natural history is pursued, which also possess this dangerous quality?

My father has assured me, that at Surinam there are two kinds of hairy caterpillars, a black and a white, which have it in a formidable degree. If they touch the skin, either of an Indian or an European, a blister is immediately formed, and as copious an effusion of serum ensues as on the application of cantharides. In less than four hours the evil increases. Acute pains are felt, accompanied with cold shiverings and fever; and if the blood or humours of the unfortunate party be in a bad state, his wound becomes an ulcer, which requires the knife to prevent a gangrene. I have in my cabinet both these caterpillars, which are remarkable for their size.

In the country of the Nimiquas a truly venomous



nomous caterpillar is found. It is two inches and a half long; but it is destitute of venom, unless it feed on a poisonous plant. When it is found on the geranium, where I have often met with it, it is in no wise dangerous, as I have been convinced by experience. Accordingly, the savages do not use such as feed on this plant. But among the rocks there grows in abundance a little shrub, the juice of which is a corrosive poison, and it communicates the same property to the caterpillars which feed on its leaves. The savages seek what they want on this shrub; and if they do not find enough on it, they take some from the geranium, and place them on this shrub to feed.

The time of gathering these insects is just as they are going to change to chrysalides: that is to say, when their rings swell, and their shape begins to alter. They are then collected; little leathern bags are filled with them; and there they are left to ferment. The fermentation occasions a slow transudation through the bag, by which the aqueous moisture is evaporated; and the intestine commotion does not cease till the residuum, being concentrated, has assumed the consistence of a very thick

black varnish. When in this state, the poison has acquired its utmost activity, and the Nimiquas dip the points of their arrows in it.

Probably this fermentation is necessary to give the poison all the virulence of which it is susceptible. At least facts have convinced me, that the humour which composes the substance of the insect is not so dangerous during its life, as after it has been dissolved and decomposed in the sack.

There are substances of which the naturalist, as well as the chemist, allows himself to examine the taste. In Europe I had several times ventured to touch the tip of my tongue with some drops of the liquor of caterpillars. I tried the same experiment with that of these poisonous caterpillars; and I found it to possess only a moderately acrid taste, differing little from what I had experienced in others.

The insect itself, taken inwardly, appears not to be poisonous. One day I saw a shrike on one of the shrubs, eating these caterpillars. If the bird be poisoned, said I to myself, I shall soon see him die. I even thought that the effect of the poison must become more quickly sensible on a gizzard, which bruises what it receives

receives into it, than on a stomach which digests only by means of solvent juices. I followed the shrike for more than two hours, attentively examining all his motions, till at length he escaped me: but, as long as I had him in view, I perceived in him no symptoms of uneasiness; he still appeared equally brisk and lively.

Beside the poison of caterpillars, the savages employ that of several kinds of snakes, to envenom their arrows; though the latter is less powerful. Those they principally use for this purpose are, the *koopcr-capel*, the *pos-adder*, and the *boorens-manetje*, or horned snake. The last takes its name from some prominent scales placed above the eyes, which project a few lines so as to form a little crest over each eye. These constitute the whole of those pretended antelopes' horns bestowed on it by Kolben, who has given a figure of it under the name of *cerastes*. I also see in Bruce's Travels into Abyssinia a horned snake called *cerastes*, which appears, at least from what that traveller says, to have real horns: but has he not examined the horns of his *cerastes* as inaccurately as those of his giraffe? For he says positively, that this quadruped



quadruped has horns like the antelope, which is certainly false.

Though the horned, or, more properly, crested snake, is not more than fifteen or eighteen inches long, and is consequently the least of the three I have mentioned, it is the most dangerous, because being almost always concealed in the sand, its smallness and grey colour prevent its being distinguished, while the *kooper-capel* is observable at a distance, in consequence of its size and vivid colours; and as to the *pos-adder*, its slowness renders it easy to avoid the attack of this species of snake.

We read in the work of a modern traveller, that, when savages wish to extract the poison of snakes, they pound them whole. Now not only have I never seen any thing of the kind among the Hottentots, but I have been often a witness to the contrary. They are not ignorant that the poison is seated in the jaw: they know the vesicles that contain it, and are well acquainted with the means of extracting it. Besides, many savages feed on the bodies of snakes, after having cut off the head. This custom is very common in many nations, though I never saw it practised by the Hottentots:



tots: but how often, on my father's plantation at Surinam, have I seen the African negroes, Louangoes, and Pomboes, though plentifully fed, seek this luxury to feast themselves! They did not reject even the rattlesnake, the most venomous of the whole tribe. All they could catch they made into ragouts with their other articles of food: snakes were to them what stewed eels are to us.

END OF THE SECOND VOLUME.

